

The revision list can be viewed directly by clicking the title page.

The revision list summarizes the locations of revisions and additions. Details should always be checked by referring to the relevant text.

# 16

# H8/300H Series

Software Manual

Renesas 16-Bit Single-Chip Microcomputer  
H8 Family/H8/300H Series

Software Manual

## Keep safety first in your circuit designs!

1. Renesas Technology Corp. puts the maximum effort into making semiconductor products better and more reliable, but there is always the possibility that trouble may occur with them. Trouble with semiconductors may lead to personal injury, fire or property damage.  
Remember to give due consideration to safety when making your circuit designs, with appropriate measures such as (i) placement of substitutive, auxiliary circuits, (ii) use of nonflammable material or (iii) prevention against any malfunction or mishap.

## Notes regarding these materials

1. These materials are intended as a reference to assist our customers in the selection of the Renesas Technology Corp. product best suited to the customer's application; they do not convey any license under any intellectual property rights, or any other rights, belonging to Renesas Technology Corp. or a third party.
2. Renesas Technology Corp. assumes no responsibility for any damage, or infringement of any third-party's rights, originating in the use of any product data, diagrams, charts, programs, algorithms, or circuit application examples contained in these materials.
3. All information contained in these materials, including product data, diagrams, charts, programs and algorithms represents information on products at the time of publication of these materials, and are subject to change by Renesas Technology Corp. without notice due to product improvements or other reasons. It is therefore recommended that customers contact Renesas Technology Corp. or an authorized Renesas Technology Corp. product distributor for the latest product information before purchasing a product listed herein.  
The information described here may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Renesas Technology Corp. assumes no responsibility for any damage, liability, or other loss rising from these inaccuracies or errors.  
Please also pay attention to information published by Renesas Technology Corp. by various means, including the Renesas Technology Corp. Semiconductor home page (<http://www.renesas.com>).
4. When using any or all of the information contained in these materials, including product data, diagrams, charts, programs, and algorithms, please be sure to evaluate all information as a total system before making a final decision on the applicability of the information and products. Renesas Technology Corp. assumes no responsibility for any damage, liability or other loss resulting from the information contained herein.
5. Renesas Technology Corp. semiconductors are not designed or manufactured for use in a device or system that is used under circumstances in which human life is potentially at stake. Please contact Renesas Technology Corp. or an authorized Renesas Technology Corp. product distributor when considering the use of a product contained herein for any specific purposes, such as apparatus or systems for transportation, vehicular, medical, aerospace, nuclear, or undersea repeater use.
6. The prior written approval of Renesas Technology Corp. is necessary to reprint or reproduce in whole or in part these materials.
7. If these products or technologies are subject to the Japanese export control restrictions, they must be exported under a license from the Japanese government and cannot be imported into a country other than the approved destination.  
Any diversion or reexport contrary to the export control laws and regulations of Japan and/or the country of destination is prohibited.
8. Please contact Renesas Technology Corp. for further details on these materials or the products contained therein.

## General Precautions on Handling of Product

### 1. Treatment of NC Pins

Note: Do not connect anything to the NC pins.

The NC (not connected) pins are either not connected to any of the internal circuitry or are used as test pins or to reduce noise. If something is connected to the NC pins, the operation of the LSI is not guaranteed.

### 2. Treatment of Unused Input Pins

Note: Fix all unused input pins to high or low level.

Generally, the input pins of CMOS products are high-impedance input pins. If unused pins are in their open states, intermediate levels are induced by noise in the vicinity, a pass-through current flows internally, and a malfunction may occur.

### 3. Processing before Initialization

Note: When power is first supplied, the product's state is undefined.

The states of internal circuits are undefined until full power is supplied throughout the chip and a low level is input on the reset pin. During the period where the states are undefined, the register settings and the output state of each pin are also undefined. Design your system so that it does not malfunction because of processing while it is in this undefined state. For those products which have a reset function, reset the LSI immediately after the power supply has been turned on.

### 4. Prohibition of Access to Undefined or Reserved Address

Note: Access to undefined or reserved addresses is prohibited.

The undefined or reserved addresses may be used to expand functions, or test registers may have been allocated to these addresses. Do not access these registers; the system's operation is not guaranteed if they are accessed.



# Preface

The H8/300H Series is built around a 32-bit H8/300H CPU core with sixteen 16-bit registers, a concise, optimized instruction set designed for high-speed operation, and a 16-Mbyte linear address space. For easy migration from the H8/300 Series, the instruction set is upward-compatible with the H8/300 Series at the object-code level. Programs coded in the high-level language C can be compiled to high-speed executable code.

This manual gives details of the H8/300H CPU instructions and can be used with all microcontrollers in the H8/300H Series.

For hardware details, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.



# Main Revisions for this Edition

<b>Item</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Revisions (See Manual for Details)</b>
All	—	All references to Hitachi, Hitachi, Ltd., Hitachi Semiconductors, and other Hitachi brand names changed to Renesas Technology Corp. Designation for categories changed from “series” to “group”





# Contents

Section 1	CPU .....	1
1.1	Overview .....	1
1.1.1	Features .....	1
1.1.2	Differences from H8/300 CPU .....	2
1.2	CPU Operating Modes .....	3
1.3	Address Space .....	7
1.4	Register Configuration .....	8
1.4.1	Overview .....	8
1.4.2	General Registers .....	9
1.4.3	Control Registers .....	10
1.4.4	Initial Register Values .....	11
1.5	Data Formats .....	12
1.5.1	General Register Data Formats .....	12
1.5.2	Memory Data Formats .....	14
1.6	Instruction Set .....	15
1.6.1	Overview .....	15
1.6.2	Instructions and Addressing Modes .....	16
1.6.3	Tables of Instructions Classified by Function .....	18
1.6.4	Basic Instruction Formats .....	26
1.6.5	Addressing Modes and Effective Address Calculation .....	28
Section 2	Instruction Descriptions .....	35
2.1	Tables and Symbols .....	35
2.1.1	Assembler Format .....	36
2.1.2	Operation .....	37
2.1.3	Condition Code .....	38
2.1.4	Instruction Format .....	38
2.1.5	Register Specification .....	39
2.1.6	Bit Data Access in Bit Manipulation Instructions .....	40
2.2	Instruction Descriptions .....	41
2.2.1 (1)	ADD (B) .....	42
2.2.1 (2)	ADD (W) .....	43
2.2.1 (3)	ADD (L) .....	44
2.2.2	ADDS .....	45
2.2.3	ADDX .....	46
2.2.4 (1)	AND (B) .....	47
2.2.4 (2)	AND (W) .....	48

2.2.4 (3)	AND (L)	49
2.2.5	ANDC	50
2.2.6	BAND	51
2.2.7	Bcc	52
2.2.8	BCLR	54
2.2.9	BIAND	56
2.2.10	BILD	57
2.2.11	BIOR	58
2.2.12	BIST	59
2.2.13	BIXOR	60
2.2.14	BLD	61
2.2.15	BNOT	62
2.2.16	BOR	64
2.2.17	BSET	65
2.2.18	BSR	67
2.2.19	BST	69
2.2.20	BTST	70
2.2.21	BXOR	72
2.2.22 (1)	CMP (B)	73
2.2.22 (2)	CMP (W)	74
2.2.22 (3)	CMP (L)	75
2.2.23	DAA	76
2.2.24	DAS	78
2.2.25 (1)	DEC (B)	80
2.2.25 (2)	DEC (W)	81
2.2.25 (3)	DEC (L)	82
2.2.26 (1)	DIVXS (B)	83
2.2.26 (2)	DIVXS (W)	85
2.2.26 (3)	DIVXS	87
2.2.27 (1)	DIVXU (B)	91
2.2.27 (2)	DIVXU (W)	92
2.2.28 (1)	EEPMOV (B)	97
2.2.28 (2)	EEPMOV (W)	98
2.2.29 (1)	EXTS (W)	100
2.2.29 (2)	EXTS (L)	101
2.2.30 (1)	EXTU (W)	102
2.2.30 (2)	EXTU (L)	103
2.2.31 (1)	INC (B)	104
2.2.31 (2)	INC (W)	105
2.2.31 (3)	INC (L)	106

2.2.32	JMP.....	107
2.2.33	JSR.....	108
2.2.34 (1)	LDC (B).....	110
2.2.34 (2)	LDC (W).....	111
2.2.35 (1)	MOV (B) .....	113
2.2.35 (2)	MOV (W) .....	114
2.2.35 (3)	MOV (L).....	115
2.2.35 (4)	MOV (B) .....	116
2.2.35 (5)	MOV (W) .....	118
2.2.35 (6)	MOV (L).....	120
2.2.35 (7)	MOV (B) .....	122
2.2.35 (8)	MOV (W) .....	124
2.2.35 (9)	MOV (L).....	126
2.2.36	MOVFPPE.....	128
2.2.37	MOVTPPE.....	129
2.2.38 (1)	MULXS (B).....	130
2.2.38 (2)	MULXS (W).....	131
2.2.39 (1)	MULXU (B).....	132
2.2.39 (2)	MULXU (W).....	133
2.2.40 (1)	NEG (B) .....	134
2.2.40 (2)	NEG (W) .....	135
2.2.40 (3)	NEG (L).....	136
2.2.41	NOP.....	137
2.2.42 (1)	NOT (B) .....	138
2.2.42 (2)	NOT (W) .....	139
2.2.42 (3)	NOT (L).....	140
2.2.43 (1)	OR (B) .....	141
2.2.43 (2)	OR (W).....	142
2.2.43 (3)	OR (L) .....	143
2.2.44	ORC.....	144
2.2.45 (1)	POP (W) .....	145
2.2.45 (2)	POP (L).....	146
2.2.46 (1)	PUSH (W) .....	147
2.2.46 (2)	PUSH (L).....	148
2.2.47 (1)	ROTL (B) .....	149
2.2.47 (2)	ROTL (W).....	150
2.2.47 (3)	ROTL (L) .....	151
2.2.48 (1)	ROTR (B) .....	152
2.2.48 (2)	ROTR (W).....	153
2.2.48 (3)	ROTR (L).....	154

2.2.49 (1) ROTXL (B) .....	155
2.2.49 (2) ROTXL (W) .....	156
2.2.49 (3) ROTXL (L).....	157
2.2.50 (1) ROTXR (B).....	158
2.2.50 (2) ROTXR (W).....	159
2.2.50 (3) ROTXR (L).....	160
2.2.51 RTE .....	161
2.2.52 RTS.....	163
2.2.53 (1) SHAL (B) .....	164
2.2.53 (2) SHAL (W) .....	165
2.2.53 (3) SHAL (L) .....	166
2.2.54 (1) SHAR (B).....	167
2.2.54 (2) SHAR (W).....	168
2.2.54 (3) SHAR (L).....	169
2.2.55 (1) SHLL (B).....	170
2.2.55 (2) SHLL (W).....	171
2.2.55 (3) SHLL (L).....	172
2.2.56 (1) SHLR (B).....	173
2.2.56 (2) SHLR (W) .....	174
2.2.56 (3) SHLR (L).....	175
2.2.57 SLEEP .....	176
2.2.58 (1) STC (B) .....	177
2.2.58 (2) STC (W) .....	178
2.2.59 (1) SUB (B).....	180
2.2.59 (2) SUB (W).....	182
2.2.59 (3) SUB (L) .....	183
2.2.60 SUBS .....	184
2.2.61 SUBX .....	185
2.2.62 TRAPA.....	186
2.2.63 (1) XOR (B) .....	187
2.2.63 (2) XOR (W) .....	188
2.2.63 (3) XOR (L) .....	189
2.2.64 XORC.....	190
2.3 Instruction Set Summary .....	191
2.4 Instruction Codes.....	205
2.5 Operation Code Map .....	213
2.6 Number of States Required for Instruction Execution.....	217
2.7 Condition Code Modification.....	228
2.8 Bus Cycles During Instruction Execution .....	233

Section 3	Processing States .....	245
3.1	Overview .....	245
3.2	Program Execution State .....	246
3.3	Exception-Handling State.....	246
	3.3.1 Types of Exception Handling and Their Priority .....	247
	3.3.2 Exception-Handling Sequences.....	248
3.4	Bus-Released State .....	250
3.5	Reset State .....	250
3.6	Power-Down State.....	250
	3.6.1 Sleep Mode.....	250
	3.6.2 Software Standby Mode .....	250
	3.6.3 Hardware Standby Mode.....	251
Section 4	Basic Timing.....	253
4.1	Overview .....	253
4.2	On-Chip Memory (RAM, ROM).....	253
4.3	On-Chip Supporting Modules .....	255
4.4	External Data Bus.....	256



---

# Section 1 CPU

## 1.1 Overview

The H8/300H CPU is a high-speed central processing unit with an internal 32-bit architecture that is upward-compatible with the H8/300 CPU. The H8/300H CPU has sixteen 16-bit general registers, can address a 16-Mbyte linear address space, and is ideal for realtime control.

### 1.1.1 Features

The H8/300H CPU has the following features.

- Upward-compatible with H8/300 CPU
  - Can execute H8/300 object programs
- General-register architecture
  - Sixteen 16-bit general registers (also usable as sixteen 8-bit registers or eight 32-bit registers)
- Sixty-two basic instructions
  - 8/16/32-bit arithmetic and logic instructions
  - Multiply and divide instructions
  - Powerful bit-manipulation instructions
- Eight addressing modes
  - Register direct [Rn]
  - Register indirect [@ERn]
  - Register indirect with displacement [@(d:16,ERn) or @(d:24,ERn)]
  - Register indirect with post-increment or pre-decrement [@ERn+ or @-ERn]
  - Absolute address [@aa:8, @aa:16, or @aa:24]
  - Immediate [#xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32]
  - Program-counter relative [@(d:8,PC) or @(d:16,PC)]
  - Memory indirect [@@aa:8]
- 16-Mbyte address space
- High-speed operation
  - All frequently-used instructions execute in two to four states
  - Maximum clock frequency: 16 MHz
  - 8/16/32-bit register-register add/subtract: 125 ns
  - 8 × 8-bit register-register multiply: 875 ns

- $16 \div$  8-bit register-register divide: 875 ns
- $16 \times$  16-bit register-register multiply: 1375 ns
- $32 \div$  16-bit register-register divide: 1375 ns
- Two CPU operating modes
  - Normal mode
  - Advanced mode
- Low-power mode
  - Transition to power-down state by SLEEP instruction

### 1.1.2 Differences from H8/300 CPU

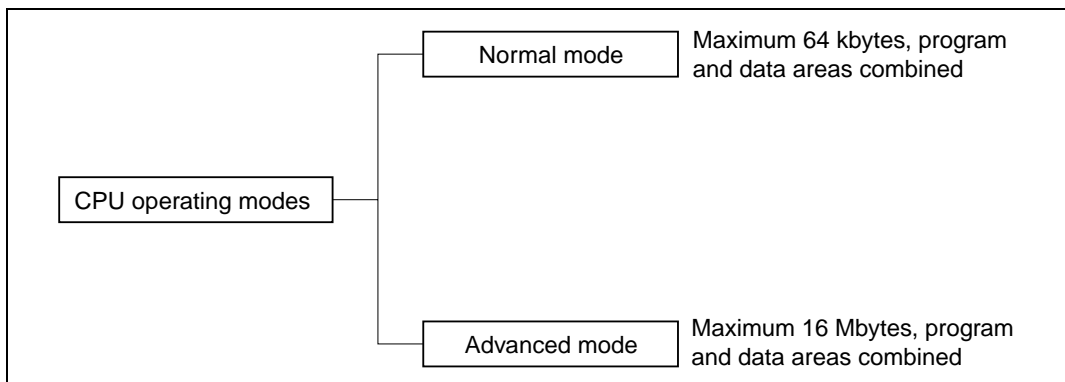
In comparison to the H8/300 CPU, the H8/300H CPU has the following enhancements.

- More general registers  
Eight 16-bit registers have been added.
- Expanded address space  
Normal mode supports the same 64-kbyte address space as the H8/300 CPU.  
Advanced mode supports a maximum 16-Mbyte address space.
- Enhanced addressing  
The addressing modes have been enhanced to make effective use of the 16-Mbyte address space.
- Enhanced instructions  
Signed multiply/divide instructions and other instructions have been added.



## 1.2 CPU Operating Modes

The H8/300H CPU has two operating modes: normal and advanced. Normal mode supports a maximum 64-kbyte address space. Advanced mode supports up to 16 Mbytes. The mode is selected at the mode pins of the microcontroller. For further information, refer to the relevant hardware manual.



**Figure 1.1 CPU Operating Modes**

### (1) Normal Mode

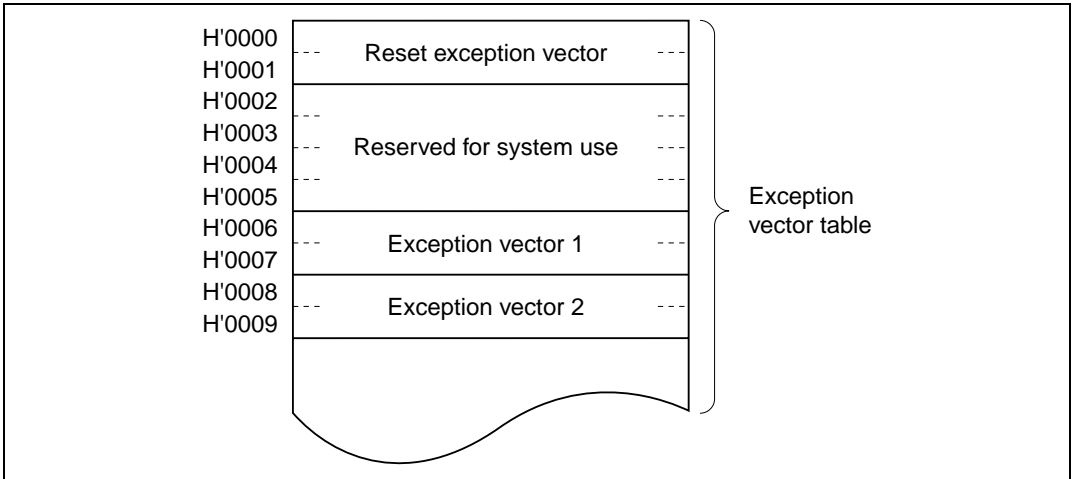
The exception vector table and stack have the same structure as in the H8/300 CPU.

**Address Space:** A maximum address space of 64 kbytes can be accessed, as in the H8/300 CPU.

**Extended Registers (En):** The extended registers (E0 to E7) can be used as 16-bit data registers, or they can be combined with the general registers (R0 to R7) for use as 32-bit data registers. When En is used as a 16-bit register it can contain any value, even when the corresponding general register (R0 to R7) is used as an address register. If the general register is referenced in the register indirect addressing mode with pre-decrement (@-Rn) or post-increment (@Rn+) and a carry or borrow occurs, however, the value in the corresponding extended register will be affected.

**Instruction Set:** All additional instructions and addressing modes of the H8/300 CPU can be used. If a 24-bit effective address (EA) is specified, only the lower 16 bits are used.

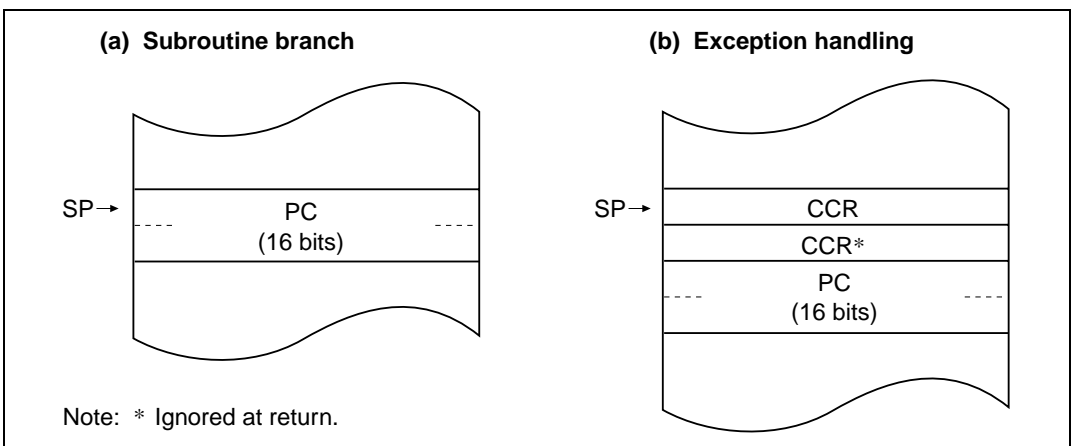
**Exception Vector Table and Memory Indirect Branch Addresses:** In normal mode the top area starting at H'0000 is allocated to the exception vector table. One branch address is stored per 16 bits (figure 1.2). The exception vector table differs depending on the microcontroller, so see the microcontroller hardware manual for further information.



**Figure 1.2 Exception Vector Table (normal mode)**

The memory indirect addressing mode (@@aa:8) employed in the JMP and JSR instructions uses an 8-bit absolute address to specify a memory operand that contains a branch address. In normal mode the operand is a 16-bit word operand, providing a 16-bit branch address. Branch addresses can be stored in the top area from H'0000 to H'00FF. Note that this area is also used for the exception vector table.

**Stack Structure:** When the program counter (PC) is pushed on the stack in a subroutine call, and the PC and condition-code register (CCR) are pushed on the stack in exception handling, they are stored in the same way as in the H8/300 CPU. See figure 1.3.



**Figure 1.3 Stack Structure (normal mode)**

## (2) Advanced Mode

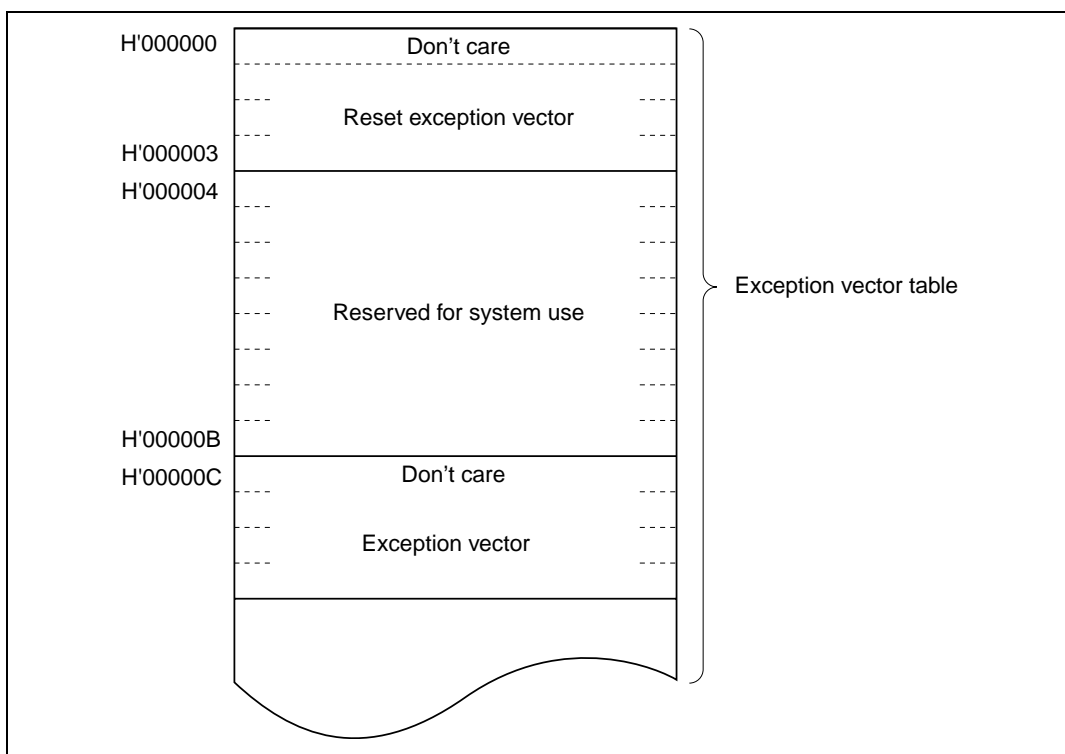
In advanced mode the exception vector table and stack structure differ from the H8/300 CPU.

**Address Space:** Up to 16 Mbytes can be accessed linearly.

**Extended Registers (En):** The extended registers (E0 to E7) can be used as 16-bit data registers, or they can be combined with the general registers (R0 to R7) for use as 32-bit data registers. When a 32-bit register is used as an address register, the upper 8 bits are ignored.

**Instruction Set:** All additional instructions and addressing modes of the H8/300H can be used.

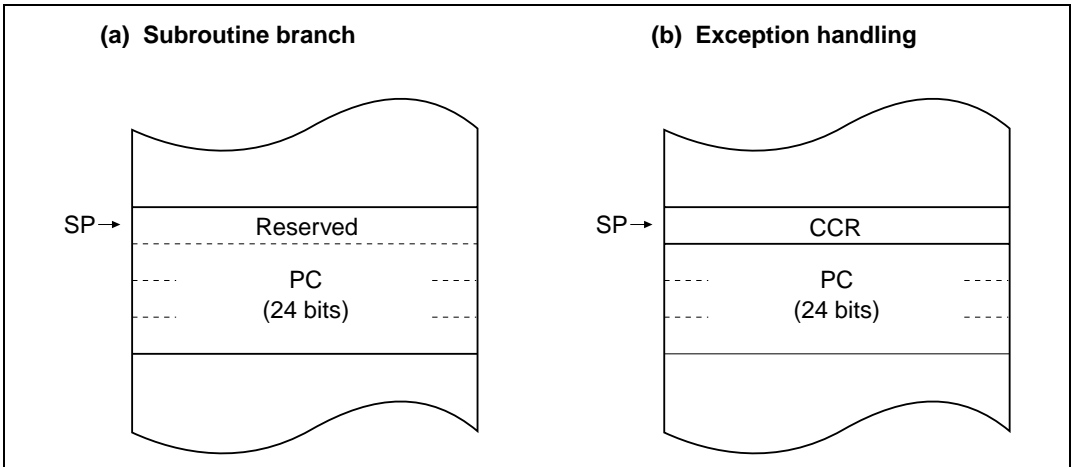
**Exception Vector Table and Memory Indirect Branch Addresses:** In advanced mode the top area starting at H'000000 is allocated to the exception vector table in units of 32 bits. In each 32 bits, the upper 8 bits are ignored and a branch address is stored in the lower 24 bits (figure 1.4). The exception vector table differs depending on the microcontroller, so see the relevant hardware manual for further information.



**Figure 1.4 Exception Vector Table (advanced mode)**

The memory indirect addressing mode (@@aa:8) employed in the JMP and JSR instructions uses an 8-bit absolute address to specify a memory operand that contains a branch address. In advanced mode the operand is a 32-bit longword operand, of which the lower 24 bits are the branch address. Branch addresses can be stored in the top area from H'000000 to H'0000FF. Note that this area is also used for the exception vector table.

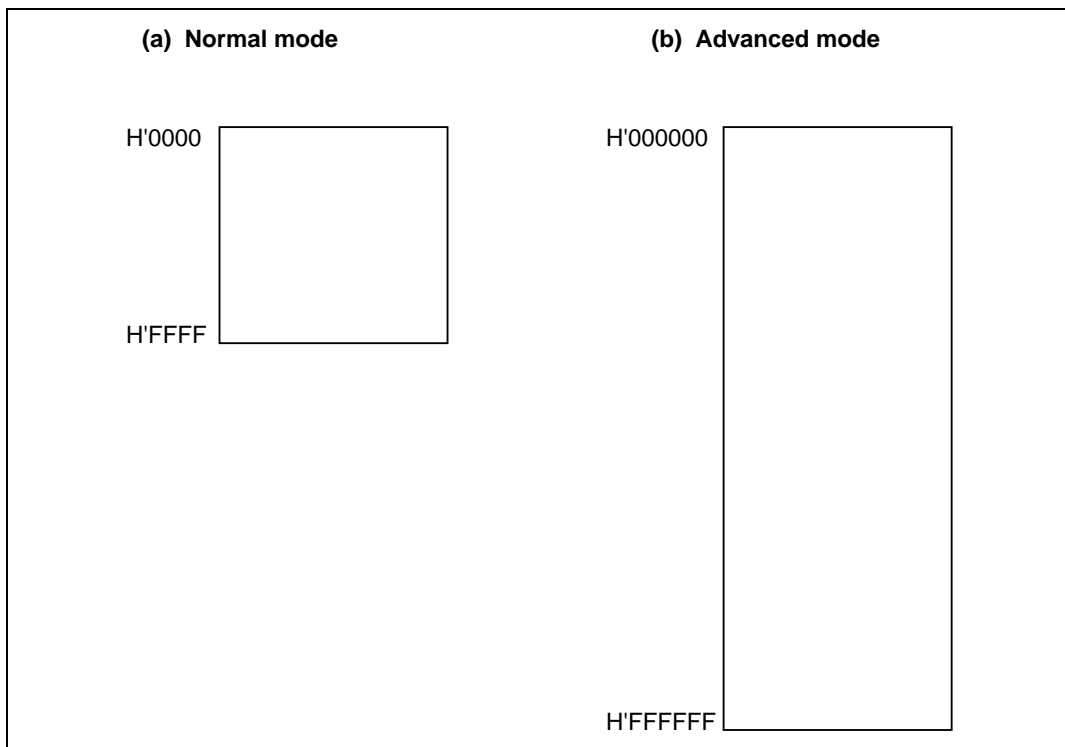
**Stack Structure:** When the program counter (PC) is pushed on the stack in a subroutine call, and the PC and condition-code register (CCR) are pushed on the stack in exception handling, they are stored as shown in figure 1.5.



**Figure 1.5 Stack Structure (advanced mode)**

### 1.3 Address Space

Figure 1.6 shows a memory map of the H8/300H CPU.

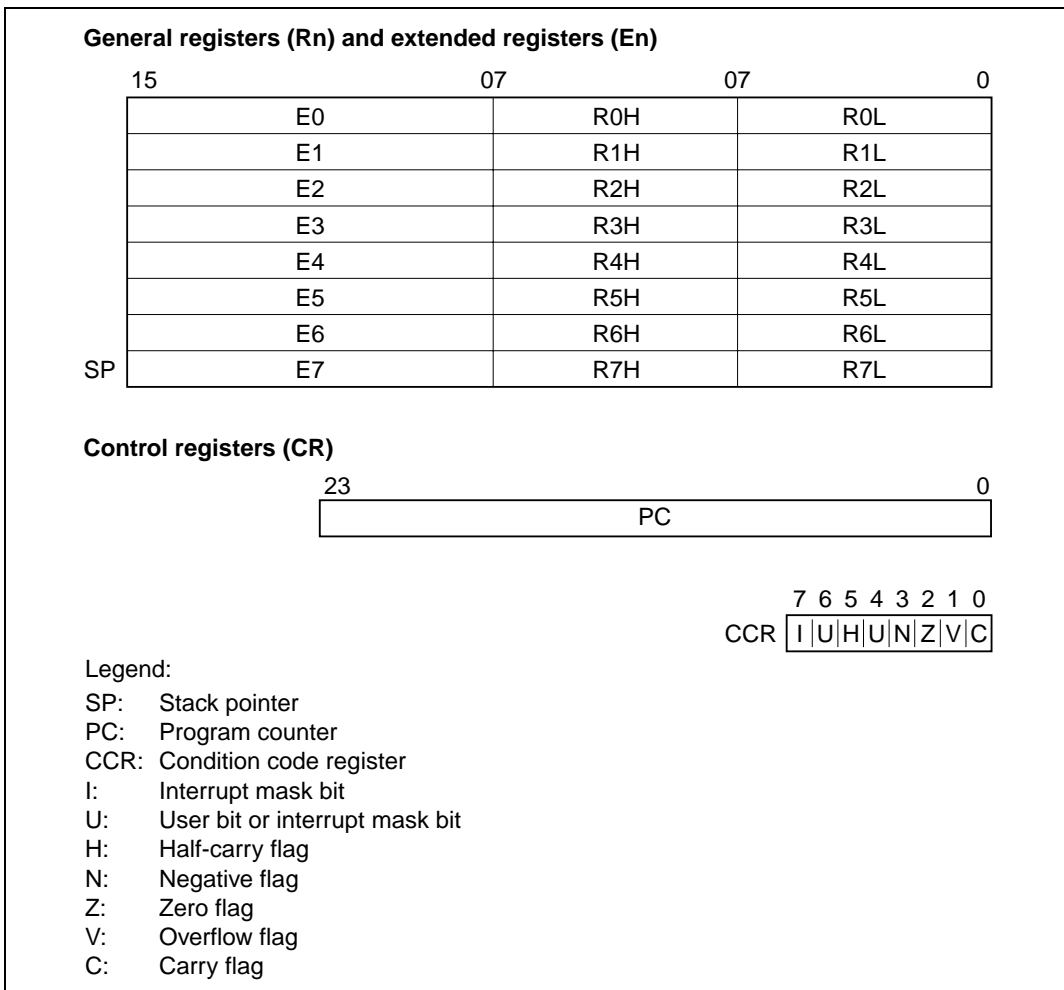


**Figure 1.6 Memory Map**

## 1.4 Register Configuration

### 1.4.1 Overview

The H8/300H CPU has the internal registers shown in figure 1.7. There are two types of registers: general and extended registers, and control registers.



**Figure 1.7 CPU Registers**

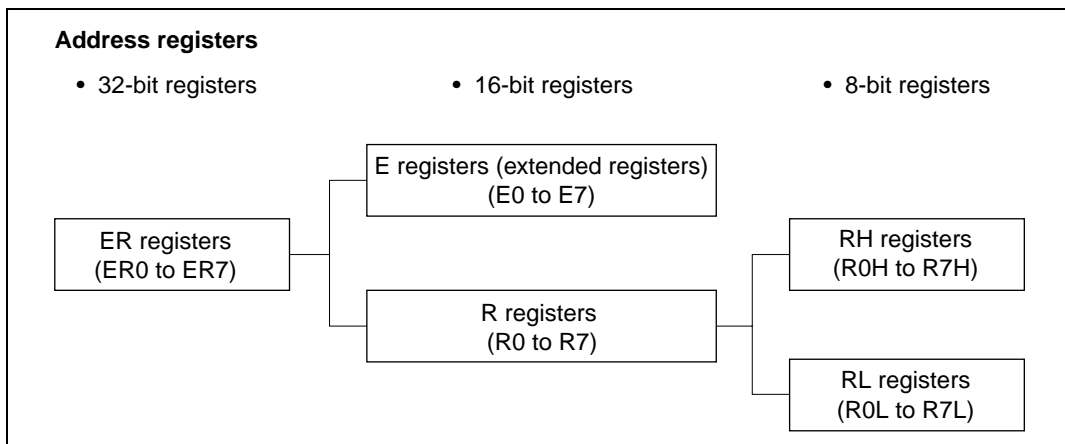
## 1.4.2 General Registers

The H8/300H CPU has eight 32-bit general registers. These general registers are all functionally alike and can be used without distinction between data registers and address registers. When a general register is used as a data register, it can be accessed as a 32-bit, 16-bit, or 8-bit register. When the general registers are used as 32-bit registers or as address registers, they are designated by the letters ER (ER0 to ER7).

The ER registers divide into 16-bit general registers designated by the letters E (E0 to E7) and R (R0 to R7). These registers are functionally equivalent, providing a maximum sixteen 16-bit registers. The E registers (E0 to E7) are also referred to as extended registers.

The R registers divide into 8-bit general registers designated by the letters RH (R0H to R7H) and RL (R0L to R7L). These registers are functionally equivalent, providing a maximum sixteen 8-bit registers.

Figure 1.8 illustrates the usage of the general registers. The usage of each register can be selected independently.



**Figure 1.8 Usage of General Registers**

General register ER7 has the function of stack pointer (SP) in addition to its general-register function, and is used implicitly in exception handling and subroutine calls. Figure 1.9 shows the stack.

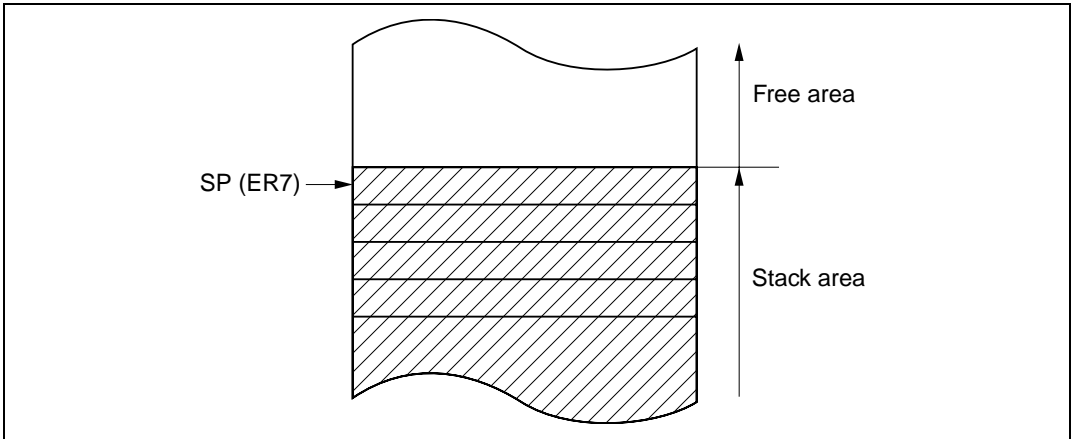


Figure 1.9 Stack

### 1.4.3 Control Registers

The control registers are the 24-bit program counter (PC) and the 8-bit condition-code register (CCR).

#### (1) Program Counter (PC)

This 24-bit counter indicates the address of the next instruction the CPU will execute. The length of all CPU instructions is 16 bits (one word) or a multiple of 16 bits, so the least significant PC bit is ignored. When an instruction is fetched, the least significant PC bit is regarded as 0.

#### (2) Condition Code Register (CCR)

This 8-bit register contains internal CPU status information, including the interrupt mask bit (I) and half-carry (H), negative (N), zero (Z), overflow (V), and carry (C) flags.

**Bit 7—Interrupt Mask Bit (I):** Masks interrupts other than NMI when set to 1. (NMI is accepted regardless of the I bit setting.) The I bit is set to 1 by hardware at the start of an exception-handling sequence.

**Bit 6—User Bit (U):** Can be written and read by software using the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. This bit can also be used as an interrupt mask bit. For details see the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.



**Bit 5—Half-Carry Flag (H):** When the ADD.B, ADDX.B, SUB.B, SUBX.B, CMP.B, or NEG.B instruction is executed, this flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 3, and cleared to 0 otherwise. When the ADD.W, SUB.W, CMP.W, or NEG.W instruction is executed, the H flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 11, and cleared to 0 otherwise. When the ADD.L, SUB.L, CMP.L, or NEG.L instruction is executed, the H flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 27, and cleared to 0 otherwise.

**Bit 4—User Bit (U):** Can be written and read by software using the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions.

**Bit 3—Negative Flag (N):** Indicates the most significant bit (sign bit) of the result of an instruction.

**Bit 2—Zero Flag (Z):** Set to 1 to indicate a zero result, and cleared to 0 to indicate a non-zero result.

**Bit 1—Overflow Flag (V):** Set to 1 when an arithmetic overflow occurs, and cleared to 0 at other times.

**Bit 0—Carry Flag (C):** Set to 1 when a carry occurs, and cleared to 0 otherwise. Used by:

- Add instructions, to indicate a carry
- Subtract instructions, to indicate a borrow
- Shift and rotate instructions, to store the value shifted out of the end bit

The carry flag is also used as a bit accumulator by bit manipulation instructions. Some instructions leave some or all of the flag bits unchanged. For the action of each instruction on the flag bits, refer to the detailed descriptions of the instructions starting in section 2.2.1.

Operations can be performed on the CCR bits by the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. The N, Z, V, and C flags are used as branching conditions for conditional branch (Bcc) instructions.

#### 1.4.4 Initial Register Values

When the CPU is reset, the program counter (PC) is loaded from the vector table and the I bit in the condition-code register (CCR) is set to 1. The other CCR bits and the general registers and extended registers are not initialized. In particular, the stack pointer (extended register E7 and general register R7) is not initialized. The stack pointer must therefore be initialized by an MOV.L instruction executed immediately after a reset.

## 1.5 Data Formats

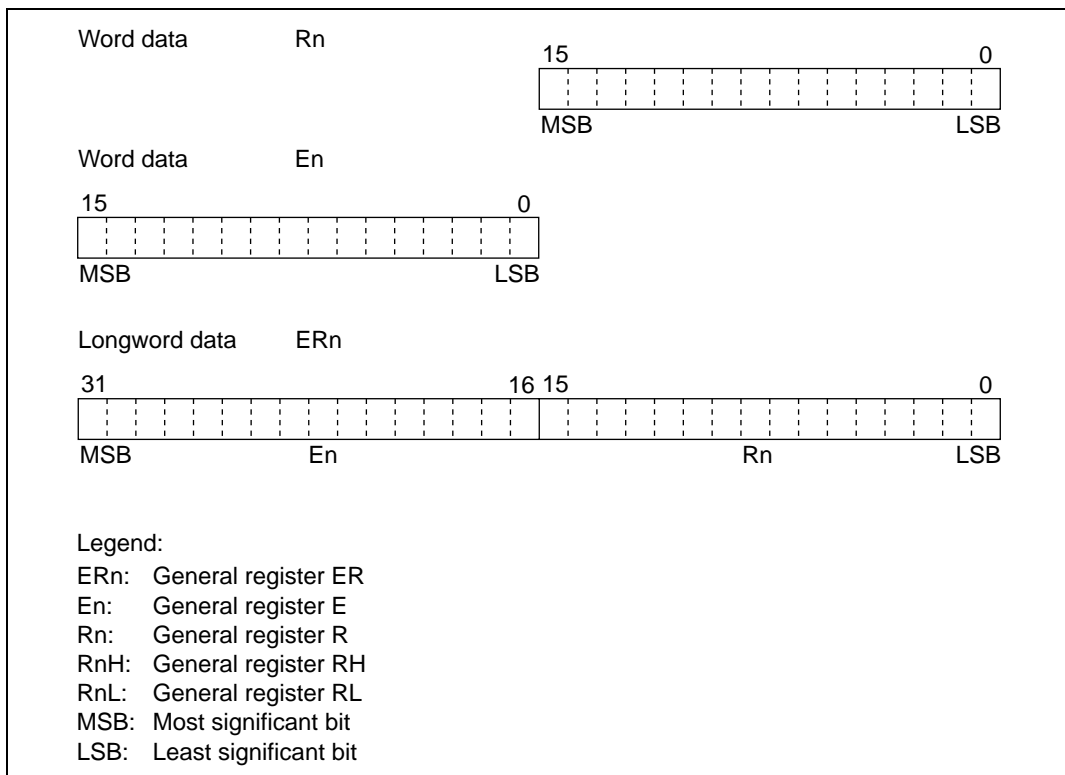
The H8/300H CPU can process 1-bit, 4-bit, 8-bit (byte), 16-bit (word), and 32-bit (longword) data. Bit-manipulation instructions operate on 1-bit data by accessing bit  $n$  ( $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 7$ ) of byte operand data. The DAA and DAS decimal-adjust instructions treat byte data as two digits of 4-bit BCD data.

### 1.5.1 General Register Data Formats

Figure 1.10 shows the data formats in general registers.

Data type	Register number	Data format
1-bit data	RnH	
1-bit data	RnL	
4-bit BCD data	RnH	
4-bit BCD data	RnL	
Byte data	RnH	
Byte data	RnL	

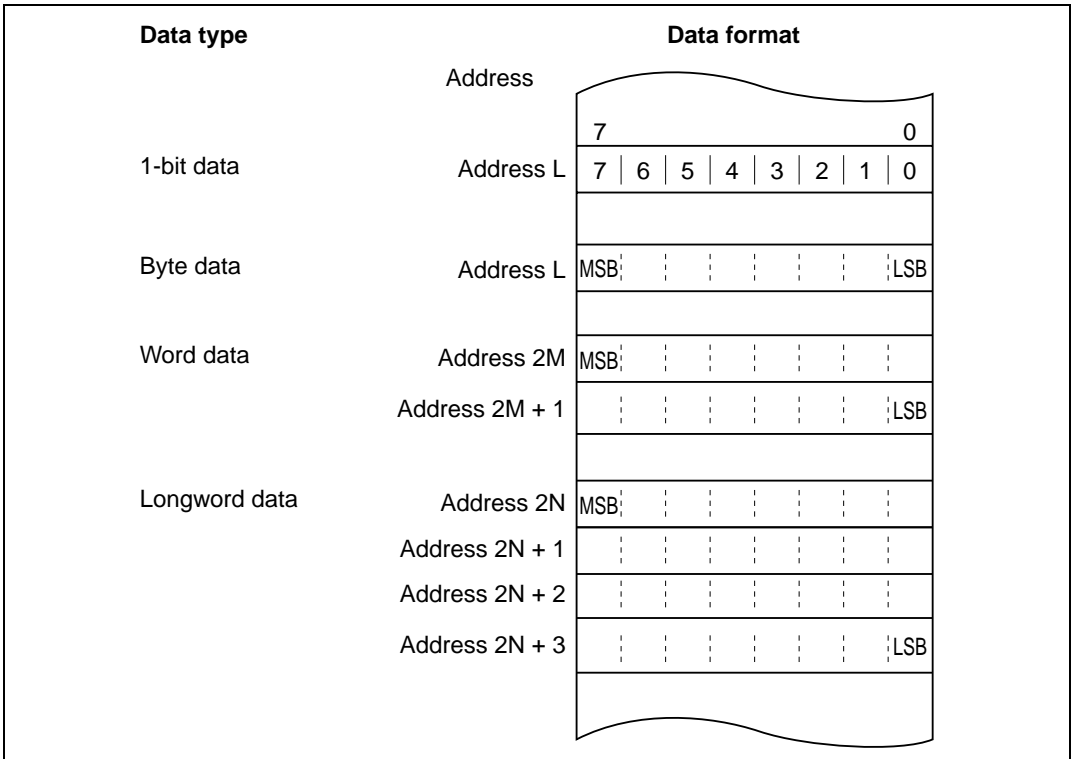
Figure 1.10 General Register Data Formats



**Figure 1.10 General Register Data Formats (cont)**

## 1.5.2 Memory Data Formats

Figure 1.11 shows the data formats on memory. The H8/300H CPU can access word data and longword data on memory, but word or longword data must begin at an even address. If an attempt is made to access word or longword data at an odd address, no address error occurs but the least significant bit of the address is regarded as 0, so the access starts at the preceding address. This also applies to instruction fetches.



**Figure 1.11 Memory Data Formats**

When ER7 is used as an address register to access the stack, the operand size should be word size or longword size.

## 1.6 Instruction Set

### 1.6.1 Overview

The H8/300H CPU has 62 types of instructions, which are classified by function in table 1.1. For a detailed description of each instruction see section 2.2, Instruction Descriptions.

**Table 1.1 Instruction Classification**

Function	Instructions	Number
Data transfer	MOV, PUSH* <sup>1</sup> , POP* <sup>2</sup> , MOVTP, MOVFPE	3
Arithmetic operations	ADD, SUB, ADDX, SUBX, INC, DEC, ADDS, SUBS, DAA, DAS, MULXU, MULXS, DIVXU, DIVXS, CMP, NEG, EXTS, EXTU	18
Logic operations	AND, OR, XOR, NOT	4
Shift	SHAL, SHAR, SHLL, SHLR, ROTL, ROTR, ROTXL, ROTXR	8
Bit manipulation	BSET, BCLR, BNOT, BTST, BAND, BAND, BOR, BIOR, BXOR, BIXOR, BLD, BILD, BST, BIST	14
Branch	Bcc* <sup>2</sup> , JMP, BSR, JSR, RTS	5
System control	TRAPA, RTE, SLEEP, LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, XORC, NOP	9
Block data transfer	EPMOV	1
Total 62 types		

Notes: The shaded instructions are not present in the H8/300 instruction set.

1. POP.W Rn and PUSH.W Rn are identical to MOV.W @SP+, Rn and MOV.W Rn, @-SP. POP.L ERn and PUSH.L ERn are identical to MOV.L @SP+, ERn and MOV.L ERn, @-SP.
2. Bcc is the generic designation of a conditional branch instruction.

## 1.6.2 Instructions and Addressing Modes

Table 1.2 indicates the instructions available in the H8/300H CPU.

**Table 1.2 Instruction Set Overview**

Function	Instruction	Addressing Modes												
		#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d:16,ERn)	@(d:24,ERn)	@ERn+/@-ERn	@aa:8	@aa:16	@aa:24	@(d:8,PC)	@(d:16,PC)	@@aa:8	
Data transfer	MOV	BWL	BWL	BWL	BWL	BWL	BWL	B	BWL	BWL	—	—	—	—
	POP, PUSH	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WL
	MOVFP, MOVTPE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	B	—	—	—	—	—
Arithmetic operations	ADD, CMP	BWL	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	SUB	WL	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	ADDX, SUBX	B	B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	ADDS, SUBS	—	L <sup>*1</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	INC, DEC	—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	DAA, DAS	—	B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	MULXU, DIVXU	—	BW	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	MULXS, DIVXS	—	BW	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	NEG	—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	EXTU, EXTS	—	WL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Logic operations	AND, OR, XOR	BWL	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	NOT	—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Shift		—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Bit manipulation		—	B	B	—	—	—	B	—	—	—	—	—	—

Function	Instruction	Addressing Modes												
		#xx	Rn	@ ERn	@(d:16,ERn)	@(d:24,ERn)	@ ERn+/@-ERn	@aa:8	@aa:16	@aa:24	@(d:8,PC)	@(d:16,PC)	@@aa:8	
Branch	Bcc, BSR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	—
	JMP, JSR	—	—	○	—	—	—	—	—	○*2	—	—	○	—
	RTS	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○
System control	TRAPA	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○
	RTE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○
	SLEEP	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○
	LDC	B	B	W	W	W	W	—	W	W	—	—	—	—
	STC	—	B	W	W	W	W	—	W	W	—	—	—	—
	ANDC, ORC, XORC	B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	NOP	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○
Block data transfer	EPMOV.B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○
	EPMOV.W	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○

Legend:

B: Byte

W: Word

L: Longword

■ : Newly added instruction in H8/300H CPU

- Notes:
1. The operand size of the ADDS and SUBS instructions of the H8/300H CPU has been changed to longword size. (In the H8/300 CPU it was word size.)
  2. Because of its larger address space, the H8/300H CPU uses a 24-bit absolute address for the JMP and JSR instructions. (The H8/300 CPU used 16 bits.)

### 1.6.3 Tables of Instructions Classified by Function

Table 1.3 summarizes the instructions in each functional category. The notation used in table 1.3 is defined next.

#### Operation Notation

Rd	General register (destination)*
Rs	General register (source)*
Rn	General register*
ERn	General register (32-bit register)
(EAd)	Destination operand
(EAs)	Source operand
CCR	Condition code register
N	N (negative) bit of CCR
Z	Z (zero) bit of CCR
V	V (overflow) bit of CCR
C	C (carry) bit of CCR
PC	Program counter
SP	Stack pointer
#IMM	Immediate data
disp	Displacement
+	Addition
-	Subtraction
×	Multiplication
÷	Division
^	AND logical
∨	OR logical
⊕	Exclusive OR logical
→	Move
¬	Not
:3/:8/:16/:24	3-, 8-, 16-, or 24-bit length

Note: \* General registers include 8-bit registers (R0H/R0L to R7H/R7L), 16-bit registers (R0 to R7, E0 to E7), and 32-bit registers (ER0 to ER7).



**Table 1.3 Instructions Classified by Function**

Type	Instruction	Size*	Function
Data transfer	MOV	B/W/L	(EAs) → Rd, Rs → (EAd) Moves data between two general registers or between a general register and memory, or moves immediate data to a general register.
	MOVFP	B	(EAs) → Rd Moves external memory contents (addressed by @aa:16) to a general register in synchronization with an E clock.
	MOVTP	B	Rs → (EAd) Moves general register contents to an external memory location (addressed by @aa:16) in synchronization with an E clock.
	POP	W/L	@SP+ → Rn Pops a register from the stack. POP.W Rn is identical to MOV.W @SP+, Rn. POP.L ERn is identical to MOV.L @SP+, ERn.
	PUSH	W/L	Rn → @-SP Pushes a register onto the stack. PUSH.W Rn is identical to MOV.W Rn, @-SP. PUSH.L ERn is identical to MOV.L ERn, @-SP.
Arithmetic operations	ADD	B/W/L	$Rd \pm Rs \rightarrow Rd$ , $Rd \pm \#IMM \rightarrow Rd$
	SUB		Performs addition or subtraction on data in two general registers, or on immediate data and data in a general register. (Immediate byte data cannot be subtracted from data in a general register. Use the SUBX or ADD instruction.)
	ADDX	B	$Rd \pm Rs \pm C \rightarrow Rd$ , $Rd \pm \#IMM \pm C \rightarrow Rd$
	SUBX		Performs addition or subtraction with carry or borrow on byte data in two general registers, or on immediate data and data in a general register.
	INC	B/W/L	$Rd \pm 1 \rightarrow Rd$ , $Rd \pm 2 \rightarrow Rd$
	DEC		Increments or decrements a general register by 1 or 2. (Byte operands can be incremented or decremented by 1 only.)

Type	Instruction	Size*	Function
Arithmetic operations	ADDS	L	$Rd \pm 1 \rightarrow Rd, Rd \pm 2 \rightarrow Rd, Rd \pm 4 \rightarrow Rd$
	SUBS		Adds or subtracts the value 1, 2, or 4 to or from data in a 32-bit register.
	DAA	B	$Rd$ decimal adjust $\rightarrow Rd$
	DAS		Decimal-adjusts an addition or subtraction result in a general register by referring to the CCR to produce 4-bit BCD data.
	MULXS	B/W	$Rd \times Rs \rightarrow Rd$ Performs signed multiplication on data in two general registers: either 8 bits $\times$ 8 bits $\rightarrow$ 16 bits or 16 bits $\times$ 16 bits $\rightarrow$ 32 bits.
	MULXU	B/W	$Rd \times Rs \rightarrow Rd$ Performs unsigned multiplication on data in two general registers: either 8 bits $\times$ 8 bits $\rightarrow$ 16 bits or 16 bits $\times$ 16 bits $\rightarrow$ 32 bits.
	DIVXS	B/W	$Rd \div Rs \rightarrow Rd$ Performs signed division on data in two general registers: either 16 bits $\div$ 8 bits $\rightarrow$ 8-bit quotient and 8-bit remainder or 32 bits $\div$ 16 bits $\rightarrow$ 16-bit quotient and 16-bit remainder.
	DIVXU	B/W	$Rd \div Rs \rightarrow Rd$ Performs unsigned division on data in two general registers: either 16 bits $\div$ 8 bits $\rightarrow$ 8-bit quotient and 8-bit remainder or 32 bits $\div$ 16 bits $\rightarrow$ 16-bit quotient and 16-bit remainder.
	CMP	B/W/L	$Rd - Rs, Rd - \#IMM$ Compares data in a general register with data in another general register or with immediate data, and sets the CCR according to the result.
	NEG	B/W/L	$0 - Rd \rightarrow Rd$ Takes the two's complement (arithmetic complement) of data in a general register.

Type	Instruction	Size*	Function
Arithmetic operations	EXTS	W/L	Rd (sign extension) → Rd Extends byte data in the lower 8 bits of a 16-bit register to word data, or extends word data in the lower 16 bits of a 32-bit register to longword data, by extending the sign bit.
	EXTU	W/L	Rd (zero extension) → Rd Extends byte data in the lower 8 bits of a 16-bit register to word data, or extends word data in the lower 16 bits of a 32-bit register to longword data, by padding with zeros.
Logic operations	AND	B/W/L	$Rd \wedge Rs \rightarrow Rd$ , $Rd \wedge \#IMM \rightarrow Rd$ Performs a logical AND operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data.
	OR	B/W/L	$Rd \vee Rs \rightarrow Rd$ , $Rd \vee \#IMM \rightarrow Rd$ Performs a logical OR operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data.
	XOR	B/W/L	$Rd \oplus Rs \rightarrow Rd$ , $Rd \oplus \#IMM \rightarrow Rd$ Performs a logical exclusive OR operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data.
	NOT	B/W/L	$\neg (Rd) \rightarrow (Rd)$ Takes the one's complement of general register contents.
Shift operations	SHAL	B/W/L	Rd (shift) → Rd
	SHAR		Performs an arithmetic shift on general register contents.
	SHLL	B/W/L	Rd (shift) → Rd
	SHLR		Performs a logical shift on general register contents.
	ROTL	B/W/L	Rd (rotate) → Rd
	ROTR		Rotates general register contents.
	ROTXL	B/W/L	Rd (rotate) → Rd
ROTXR	Rotates general register contents through the carry bit.		

Type	Instruction	Size*	Function
Bit-manipulation instructions	BSET	B	$1 \rightarrow (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>})$ Sets a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to 1. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register.
	BCLR	B	$0 \rightarrow (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>})$ Clears a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to 0. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register.
	BNOT	B	$\neg (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>})$ Inverts a specified bit in a general register or memory operand. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register.
	BTST	B	$\neg (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow Z$ Tests a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and sets or clears the Z flag accordingly. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register.
	BAND	B	$C \wedge (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow C$ ANDs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
	BIAND	B	$C \wedge \neg (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow C$ ANDs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.  The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.

Type	Instruction	Size*	Function
Bit-manipulation instructions	BOR	B	$C \vee (\langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle) \rightarrow C$ ORs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
	BIOR	B	$C \vee [\neg (\langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle)] \rightarrow C$ ORs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.
	BXOR	B	$C \oplus (\langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle) \rightarrow C$ Exclusive-ORs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
	BIXOR	B	$C \oplus [\neg (\langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle)] \rightarrow C$ Exclusive-ORs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.
	BLD	B	$(\langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle) \rightarrow C$ Transfers a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to the carry flag.
	BILD	B	$\neg (\langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle) \rightarrow C$ Transfers the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.
	BST	B	$C \rightarrow (\langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle)$ Transfers the carry flag value to a specified bit in a general register or memory operand.
	BIST	B	$\neg C \rightarrow (\langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle)$ Transfers the inverse of the carry flag value to a specified bit in a general register or memory operand. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.

Type	Instruction	Size*	Function																																																			
Branching instructions	Bcc	—	Branches to a specified address if a specified condition is true. The branching conditions are listed below.																																																			
			<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mnemonic</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Condition</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BRA(BT)</td> <td>Always (true)</td> <td>Always</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BRN(BF)</td> <td>Never (false)</td> <td>Never</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BHI</td> <td>High</td> <td><math>C \vee Z = 0</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLS</td> <td>Low or same</td> <td><math>C \vee Z = 1</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bcc(BHS)</td> <td>Carry clear (high or same)</td> <td><math>C = 0</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BCS(BLO)</td> <td>Carry set (low)</td> <td><math>C = 1</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BNE</td> <td>Not equal</td> <td><math>Z = 0</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BEQ</td> <td>Equal</td> <td><math>Z = 1</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BVC</td> <td>Overflow clear</td> <td><math>V = 0</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BVS</td> <td>Overflow set</td> <td><math>V = 1</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BPL</td> <td>Plus</td> <td><math>N = 0</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BMI</td> <td>Minus</td> <td><math>N = 1</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BGE</td> <td>Greater or equal</td> <td><math>N \oplus V = 0</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLT</td> <td>Less than</td> <td><math>N \oplus V = 1</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BGT</td> <td>Greater than</td> <td><math>Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 0</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLE</td> <td>Less or equal</td> <td><math>Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 1</math></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Mnemonic	Description	Condition	BRA(BT)	Always (true)	Always	BRN(BF)	Never (false)	Never	BHI	High	$C \vee Z = 0$	BLS	Low or same	$C \vee Z = 1$	Bcc(BHS)	Carry clear (high or same)	$C = 0$	BCS(BLO)	Carry set (low)	$C = 1$	BNE	Not equal	$Z = 0$	BEQ	Equal	$Z = 1$	BVC	Overflow clear	$V = 0$	BVS	Overflow set	$V = 1$	BPL	Plus	$N = 0$	BMI	Minus	$N = 1$	BGE	Greater or equal	$N \oplus V = 0$	BLT	Less than	$N \oplus V = 1$	BGT	Greater than	$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 0$	BLE	Less or equal	$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 1$
			Mnemonic	Description	Condition																																																	
			BRA(BT)	Always (true)	Always																																																	
			BRN(BF)	Never (false)	Never																																																	
			BHI	High	$C \vee Z = 0$																																																	
			BLS	Low or same	$C \vee Z = 1$																																																	
			Bcc(BHS)	Carry clear (high or same)	$C = 0$																																																	
			BCS(BLO)	Carry set (low)	$C = 1$																																																	
			BNE	Not equal	$Z = 0$																																																	
			BEQ	Equal	$Z = 1$																																																	
			BVC	Overflow clear	$V = 0$																																																	
			BVS	Overflow set	$V = 1$																																																	
			BPL	Plus	$N = 0$																																																	
			BMI	Minus	$N = 1$																																																	
			BGE	Greater or equal	$N \oplus V = 0$																																																	
			BLT	Less than	$N \oplus V = 1$																																																	
			BGT	Greater than	$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 0$																																																	
			BLE	Less or equal	$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 1$																																																	
			JMP	—	Branches unconditionally to a specified address.																																																	
BSR	—	Branches to a subroutine at a specified address.																																																				
JSR	—	Branches to a subroutine at a specified address.																																																				
RTS	—	Returns from a subroutine.																																																				

Type	Instruction	Size*	Function
System control instructions	TRAPA	—	Starts trap-instruction exception handling.
	RTE	—	Returns from an exception-handling routine.
	SLEEP	—	Causes a transition to the power-down state.
	LDC	B/W	(EAs) → CCR Moves the source operand contents to the condition code register. Byte transfer is performed in the #xx:8, Rs addressing mode and word transfer in other addressing modes.
	STC	B/W	CCR → (EAd) Transfers the CCR contents to a destination location. Byte transfer is performed in the Rd addressing mode and word transfer in other addressing modes.
	ANDC	B	CCR ∧ #IMM → CCR Logically ANDs the condition code register with immediate data.
	ORC	B	CCR ∨ #IMM → CCR Logically ORs the condition code register with immediate data.
	XORC	B	CCR ⊕ #IMM → CCR Logically exclusive-ORs the condition code register with immediate data.
	NOP	—	PC + 2 → PC Only increments the program counter.

Type	Instruction	Size*	Function
Block data transfer instruction	EEPMOV.B	—	if R4L $\neq$ 0 then Repeat @ER5 $\leftrightarrow$ @ER6 + R4L - 1 $\rightarrow$ R4L Until R4L = 0 else next;
	EEPMOV.W	—	if R4 $\neq$ 0 then Repeat @ER5 $\leftrightarrow$ @ER6 + R4 - 1 $\rightarrow$ R4L Until R4 = 0 else next;
			Transfers a data block according to parameters set in general registers R4L or R4, ER5, and R6. R4L or R4: size of block (bytes) ER5: starting source address R6: starting destination address Execution of the next instruction begins as soon as the transfer is completed.

Note: \* Size refers to the operand size.

B: Byte

W: Word

L: Longword

#### 1.6.4 Basic Instruction Formats

The H8/300H instructions consist of 2-byte (1-word) units. An instruction consists of an operation field (OP field), a register field (r field), an effective address extension (EA field), and a condition field (cc).

**Operation Field:** Indicates the function of the instruction, the effective address, and the operation to be carried out on the operand. The operation field always includes the first four bits of the instruction. Some instructions have two operation fields.

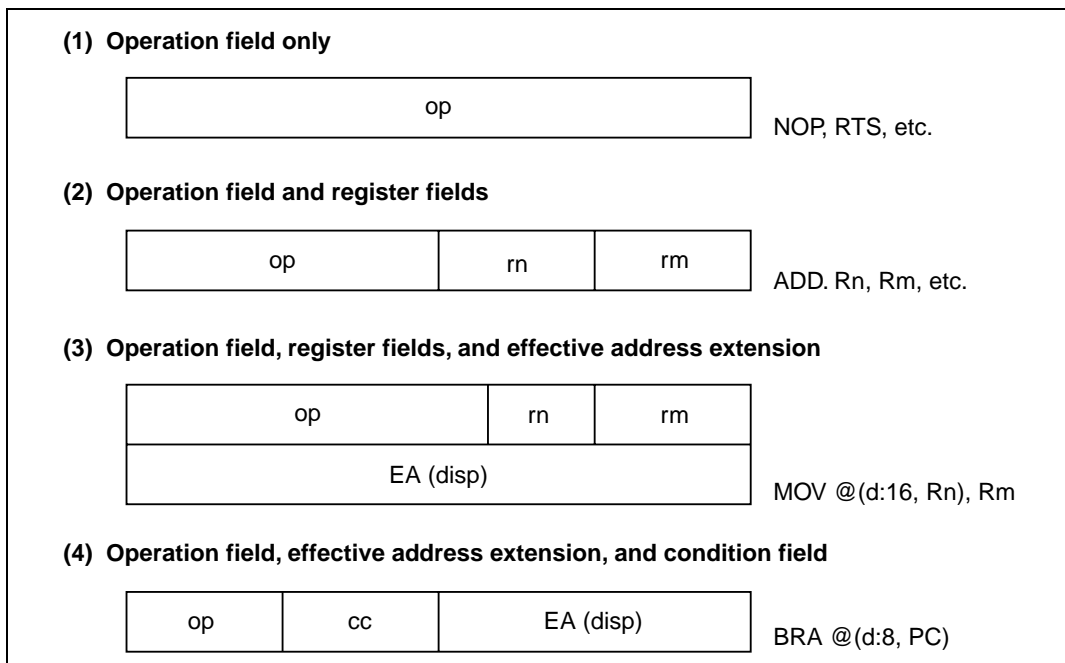
**Register Field:** Specifies a general register. Address registers are specified by 3 bits, data registers by 3 bits or 4 bits. Some instructions have two register fields. Some have no register field.

**Effective Address Extension:** Eight, 16, or 32 bits specifying immediate data, an absolute address, or a displacement. A 24-bit address or a displacement is treated as 32-bit data in which the first 8 bits are 0.



**Condition Field:** Specifies the branching condition of Bcc instructions.

Figure 1.12 shows examples of instruction formats.



**Figure 1.12 Instruction Formats**

## 1.6.5 Addressing Modes and Effective Address Calculation

### (1) Addressing Modes

The H8/300H CPU supports the eight addressing modes listed in table 1.4. Each instruction uses a subset of these addressing modes. Arithmetic and logic instructions can use the register direct and immediate modes. Data transfer instructions can use all addressing modes except program-counter relative and memory indirect. Bit manipulation instructions use register direct, register indirect, or absolute (8-bit) addressing mode to specify an operand, and register direct (BSET, BCLR, BNOT, and BTST instructions) or immediate (3-bit) addressing mode to specify a bit number in the operand.

**Table 1.4 Addressing Modes**

No.	Addressing Mode	Symbol
1	Register direct	Rn
2	Register indirect	@ERn
3	Register indirect with displacement	@(d:16,ERn)/@(d:24,ERn)
4	Register indirect with post-increment Register indirect with pre-decrement	@ERn+ @-ERn
5	Absolute address	@aa:8/@aa:16/@aa:24
6	Immediate	#xx:8/#xx:16/#xx:32
7	Program-counter relative	@(d:8,PC)/@(d:16,PC)
8	Memory indirect	@@aa:8

**1 Register Direct—Rn:** The register field of the instruction specifies an 8-, 16-, or 32-bit general register containing the operand. R0H to R7H and R0L to R7L can be specified as 8-bit registers. R0 to R7 and E0 to E7 can be specified as 16-bit registers. ER0 to ER7 can be specified as 32-bit registers.

**2 Register Indirect—@ERn:** The register field of the instruction code specifies an address register (ERn), the lower 24 bits of which contain the address of a memory operand.

**3 Register Indirect with Displacement—@(d:16, ERn) or @(d:24, ERn):** A 16-bit or 24-bit displacement contained in the instruction is added to an address register (an extended register paired with a general register) specified by the register field of the instruction, and the lower 24 bits of the sum specify the address of a memory operand. A 16-bit displacement is sign-extended when added.

#### 4 Register Indirect with Post-Increment or Pre-Decrement—@ERn+ or @-ERn:

- Register indirect with post-increment—@ERn+

The register field of the instruction code specifies an address register (ERn), the lower 24 bits of which contain the address of a memory operand. After the operand is accessed, 1, 2, or 4 is added to the address register contents (32 bits) and the sum is stored in the address register.

The value added is 1 for byte access, 2 for word access, or 4 for longword access. For word or longword access, the register value should be even.

- Register indirect with pre-decrement—@-ERn

The value 1, 2, or 4 is subtracted from an address register (ERn) specified by the register field in the instruction code, and the lower 24 bits of the result becomes the address of a memory operand. The result is also stored in the address register. The value subtracted is 1 for byte access, 2 for word access, or 4 for longword access. For word or longword access, the resulting register value should be even.

**5 Absolute Address—@aa:8, @aa:16, or @aa:24:** The instruction code contains the absolute address of a memory operand. The absolute address may be 8 bits long (@aa:8), 16 bits long (@aa:16), or 24 bits long (@aa:24). For an 8-bit absolute address, the upper 16 bits are all assumed to be 1 (H'FFFF). For a 16-bit absolute address the upper 8 bits are a sign extension. A 24-bit absolute address can access the entire address space. Table 1.5 indicates the accessible address ranges.

**Table 1.5 Absolute Address Access Ranges**

	Normal Mode	Advanced Mode
8 bits (@aa:8)	H'FF00 to H'FFFF (65,280 to 65,535)	H'FFFF00 to H'FFFFFF (16,776,960 to 16,777,215)
16 bits (@aa:16)	H'0000 to H'FFFF (0 to 65,535)	H'000000 to H'007FFF, H'FF8000 to H'FFFFFF (0 to 32,767, 16,744,448 to 16,777,215)
24 bits (@aa:24)	H'0000 to H'FFFF (0 to 65,535)	H'00000 to H'FFFFFF (0 to 16,777,215)

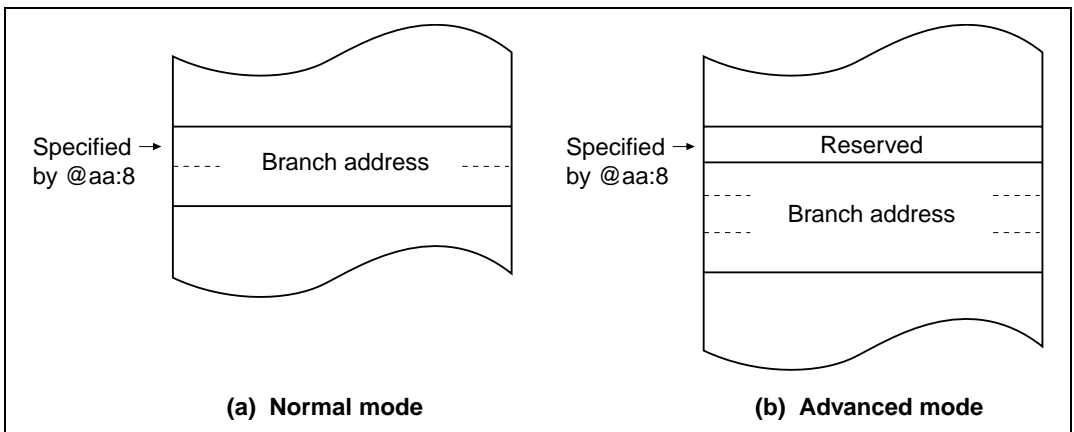
For further details on the accessible range, see the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

**6 Immediate—#xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32:** The instruction contains 8-bit (#xx:8), 16-bit (#xx:16), or 32-bit (#xx:32) immediate data as an operand.

The ADDS, SUBS, INC, and DEC instructions contain immediate data implicitly. Some bit manipulation instructions contain 3-bit immediate data in the second or fourth byte of the instruction, specifying a bit number. The TRAPA instruction contains 2-bit immediate data in the second byte of the instruction, specifying a vector address.

**7 Program-Counter Relative—@(**d**:8, PC) or @(**d**:16, PC):** This mode is used in the Bcc and BSR instructions. An 8-bit or 16-bit displacement contained in the instruction is sign-extended and added to the 24-bit program counter (PC) contents to generate a branch address. The PC value to which the displacement is added is the address of the first byte of the next instruction, so the possible branching range is  $-126$  to  $+128$  bytes ( $-63$  to  $+64$  words) or  $-32766$  to  $+32768$  bytes ( $-16383$  to  $+16384$  words) from the branch instruction. The resulting value should be an even number.

**8 Memory Indirect—@@**aa**:8:** This mode can be used by the JMP and JSR instructions. The second byte of the instruction specifies a memory operand by an 8-bit absolute address. This memory operand contains a branch address. The upper 8 bits of the absolute address are assumed to be 0 (H'00), so the address range is 0 to 255 (H'0000 to H'00FF in normal mode, H'000000 to H'0000FF in advanced mode). In normal mode the memory operand is a word operand and the branch address is 16 bits long. In advanced mode the memory operand is a longword operand. The first byte is ignored and the branch address is 24 bits long. Note that the first part of the address range is also the exception vector area. For further details see the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.



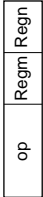
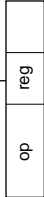



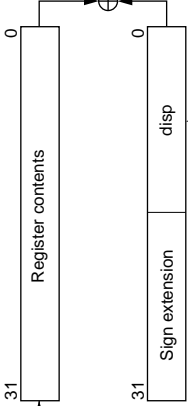

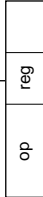
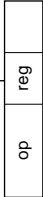
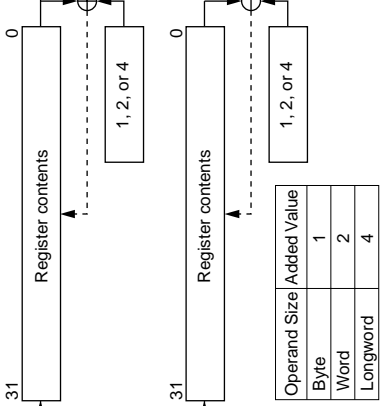
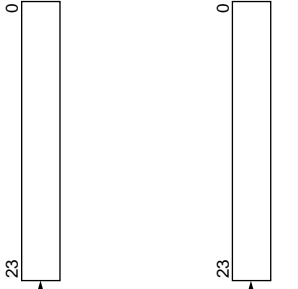
**Figure 1.13 Branch Address Specification in Memory Indirect Mode**




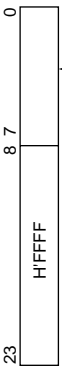



If an odd address is specified in word or longword memory access, or as a branch address, the least significant bit is regarded as 0, causing access to be performed at the address preceding the specified address. [See (2) Memory Data Formats in section 1.5.2 for further information.]

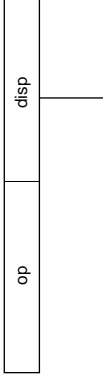
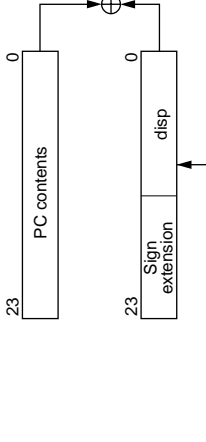



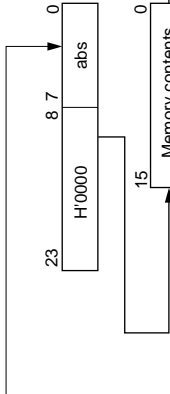
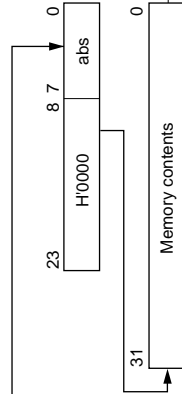


## (2) Effective Address Calculation

Table 1.6 indicates how effective addresses are calculated in each addressing mode. In normal mode the upper 8 bits of the effective address are ignored in order to generate a 16-bit address.

Table 1.6 Effective Address Calculation

No.	Addressing Mode and Instruction Format	Effective Address Calculation	Effective Address (EA)								
(1)	Register direct 		Operands are contents of regm and regn								
(2)	Register indirect @ERn 										
(3)	Register indirect with displacement @(d:16, ERn) 										
(4)	Register indirect with post-increment or pre-decrement • Register indirect with post-increment @ERn+  • Register indirect with pre-decrement @-ERn 	 <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Operand Size Added Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Byte</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Word</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Longword</td> <td>4</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand Size Added Value		Byte	1	Word	2	Longword	4	
Operand Size Added Value											
Byte	1										
Word	2										
Longword	4										

No.	Addressing Mode and Instruction Format	Effective Address Calculation	Effective Address (EA)
(5)	<p>Absolute address</p> <p>@aa:8</p>  <p>@aa:16</p>  <p>@aa:24</p> 		  
(6)	<p>Immediate #xx:8/#xx:16/#xx:32</p> 		<p>Operand is immediate data.</p>

No.	Addressing Mode and Instruction Format	Effective Address Calculation	Effective Address (EA)
(7)	Program-counter relative @(d:8, PC)/@(d:16, PC) 		
(8)	Memory indirect @:aa:8 Normal mode  Advanced mode 	 	 

Legend:

reg, regm, regn: General registers  
 op: Operation field  
 disp: Displacement  
 abs: Absolute address  
 IMM: Immediate data





## Section 2 Instruction Descriptions

### 2.1 Tables and Symbols

This section explains how to read the tables describing each instruction. Note that the descriptions of some instructions extend over two pages or more.

**Mnemonic (full name):** Gives the full and mnemonic names of the instruction.

**Type:** Indicates the type of instruction.

**Operation:** Describes the instruction in symbolic notation. (See section 2.1.2, Operation.)

**Assembly-Language Format:** Indicates the assembly-language format of the instruction. (See section 2.1.1, Assembler Format.)

**Operand Size:** Indicates the available operand sizes.

**Condition Code:** Indicates the effect of instruction execution on the flag bits in the CCR. (See section 2.1.3, Condition Code.)

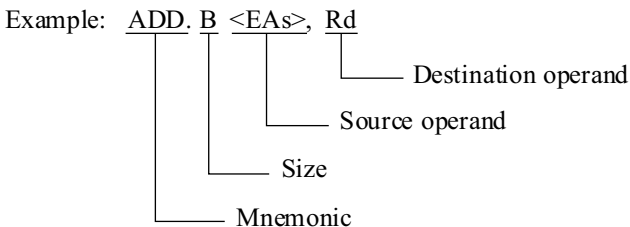
**Description:** Describes the operation of the instruction in detail.

**Available Registers:** Indicates which registers can be specified in the register field of the instruction.

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution:** Shows the addressing modes and instruction format together with the number of states required for execution.

**Notes:** Gives notes concerning execution of the instruction.

### 2.1.1 Assembler Format



The operand size is byte (B), word (W), or longword (L). Some instructions are restricted to a limited set of operand sizes.

The symbol <EA> indicates that two or more addressing modes can be used. The H8/300H CPU supports the eight addressing modes listed next. Effective address calculation is described in section 1.7, Effective Address Calculation.

Symbol	Addressing Mode
Rn	Register direct
@ERn	Register indirect
@(d:16, ERn)/@(d:24, ERn)	Register indirect with displacement (16-bit or 24-bit)
@ERn+, @-ERn	Register indirect with post-increment or pre-decrement
@aa:8/16/24	Absolute address (8-bit, 16-bit, or 24-bit)
#xx:8/16/32	Immediate (8-bit, 16-bit, or 32-bit)
@(d:8, PC)/@(d:16, PC)	Program-counter relative (8-bit or 16-bit)
@@aa:8	Memory indirect

## 2.1.2 Operation

The symbols used in the operation descriptions are defined as follows.

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
Rd	General destination register*
Rs	General source register*
Rn	General register*
ERd	General destination register (address register or 32-bit register)
ERs	General source register (address register or 32-bit register)
ERn	General register (32-bit register)
(EAd)	Destination operand
(EAs)	Source operand
PC	Program counter
SP	Stack pointer
CCR	Condition-code register
N	N (negative) flag in CCR
Z	Z (zero) flag in CCR
V	V (overflow) flag in CCR
C	C (carry) flag in CCR
disp	Displacement
→	Transfer from the operand on the left to the operand on the right, or transition from the state on the left to the state on the right
+	Addition of the operands on both sides
−	Subtraction of the operand on the right from the operand on the left
×	Multiplication of the operands on both sides
÷	Division of the operand on the left by the operand on the right
^	Logical AND of the operands on both sides
∨	Logical OR of the operands on both sides
⊕	Logical exclusive OR of the operands on both sides
¬	Logical NOT (logical complement)
( ) < >	Contents of effective address of the operand

Note: \* General registers include 8-bit registers (R0H to R7H and R0L to R7L), 16-bit registers (R0 to R7 and E0 to E7) and 32-bit registers.

### 2.1.3 Condition Code

The symbols used in the condition-code description are defined as follows.

Symbol	Meaning
↕	Changes according to the result of the instruction
*	Undetermined (no guaranteed value)
0	Always cleared to 0
—	Not affected by execution of the instruction
Δ	Varies depending on conditions; see the notes.

---

### 2.1.4 Instruction Format

The symbols used in the instruction format descriptions are listed below.

Symbol	Meaning
IMM	Immediate data (2, 3, 8, 16, or 32 bits)
abs	Absolute address (8, 16, or 24 bits)
disp	Displacement (8, 16, or 24 bits)
rs, rd, rn	Register number (4 bits. The symbol rs corresponds to operand symbols such as Rs. The symbol rd corresponds to operand symbols such as Rd. The symbol rn corresponds to the operand symbol Rn.)
ers, erd, ern	Register number (3 bits. The symbol ers corresponds to operand symbols such as ERs. The symbol erd corresponds to operand symbols such as ERd and @ERd. The symbol ern corresponds to the operand symbol ERn.)

---

### 2.1.5 Register Specification

**Address Register Specification:** When a general register is used as an address register [ $@ERn$ ,  $@(d:16, ERn)$ ,  $@(d:24, ERn)$ ,  $@ERn+$ , or  $@-ERn$ ], the register is specified by a 3-bit register field (ers or erd). The lower 24 bits of the register are valid.

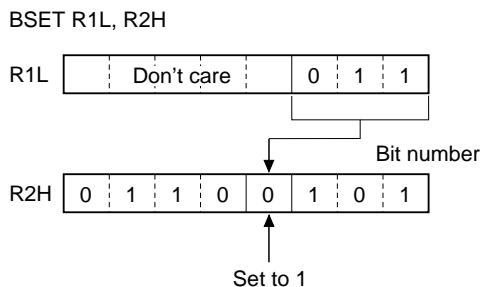
**Data Register Specification:** A general register can be used as a 32-bit, 16-bit, or 8-bit data register, which is specified by a 3-bit register number. When a 32-bit register ( $ERn$ ) is used as a longword data register, it is specified by a 3-bit register field (ers, erd, or ern). When a 16-bit register is used as a word data register, it is specified by a 4-bit register field (rs, rd, or rn). The lower 3 bits specify the register number. The upper bit is set to 1 to specify an extended register ( $En$ ) or cleared to 0 to specify a general register ( $Rn$ ). When an 8-bit register is used as a byte data register, it is specified by a 4-bit register field (rs, rd, or rn). The lower 3 bits specify the register number. The upper bit is set to 1 to specify a low register ( $RnL$ ) or cleared to 0 to specify a high register ( $RnH$ ). This is shown next.

Address Register 32-bit Register		16-bit Register		8-bit Register	
Register Field	General Register	Register Field	General Register	Register Field	General Register
000	ER0	0000	R0	0000	R0H
001	ER1	0001	R1	0001	R1H
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
111	ER7	0111	R7	0111	R7H
		1000	E0	1000	E0L
		1001	E1	1001	E1L
		⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
		1111	E7	1111	E7L

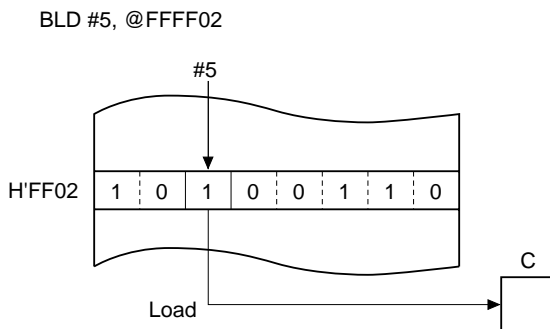
### 2.1.6 Bit Data Access in Bit Manipulation Instructions

Bit data is accessed as the n-th bit ( $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, 7$ ) of a byte operand in a general register or memory. The bit number is given by 3-bit immediate data, or by the lower 3 bits of a general register value.

Example 1: To set bit 3 in R2H to 1



Example 2: To load bit 5 at address H'FFF02 into the bit accumulator



The operand size and addressing mode are as indicated for register or memory operand data.

## 2.2 Instruction Descriptions

The instructions are described starting in section 2.2.1.

**2.2.1 (1) ADD (B)****ADD (ADD binary)****Add Binary****Operation**

Rd + (EAs) → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

ADD.B &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Set to 1 if there is a carry at bit 3;  
otherwise cleared to 0.N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise  
cleared to 0.Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise  
cleared to 0.V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise  
cleared to 0.C: Set to 1 if there is a carry at bit 7;  
otherwise cleared to 0.**Description**

This instruction adds the source operand to the contents of an 8-bit register Rd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	ADD.B	#xx:8, Rd	8 ⋮ rd	IMM			2
Register direct	ADD.B	Rs, Rd	0 ⋮ 8	rs ⋮ rd			2

**Notes**



## 2.2.1 (2) ADD (W)

## ADD (ADD binary)

## Add Binary

## Operation

Rd + (EAs) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

## Assembly-Language Format

ADD.W &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

## Operand Size

Word

H: Set to 1 if there is a carry at bit 11;  
otherwise cleared to 0.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise  
cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise  
cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise  
cleared to 0.

C: Set to 1 if there is a carry at bit 15;  
otherwise cleared to 0.

## Description

This instruction adds the source operand to the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd.

## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	ADD.W	#xx:16, Rd	7 : 9	1 : rd	IMM		4
Register direct	ADD.W	Rs, Rd	0 : 9	rs : rd			2

## Notes

**2.2.1 (3) ADD (L)****ADD (ADD binary)****Add Binary****Operation**

ERd + (EAs) → ERd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

ADD.L &lt;EAs&gt;, ERd

**Operand Size**

Longword

H: Set to 1 if there is a carry at bit 27; otherwise cleared to 0.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Set to 1 if there is a carry at bit 31; otherwise cleared to 0.

**Description**

This instruction adds the source operand to the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

ERs: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format						No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	
Immediate	ADD.L	#xx:32, ERd	7 : A	1 : 0 : erd	IMM				6
Register direct	ADD.L	Rs, ERd	0 : A	1 : ers : 0 : erd					2

**Notes**

## 2.2.2 ADDS

### ADDS (ADD with Sign extension)

### Add Binary Address Data

#### Operation

Rd + 1 → ERd

Rd + 2 → ERd

Rd + 4 → ERd

#### Assembly-Language Format

ADDS #1, ERd

ADDS #2, ERd

ADDS #4, ERd

#### Operand Size

Longword

#### Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

#### Description

This instruction adds the immediate value 1, 2, or 4 to the contents of a 32-bit register ERd. Differing from the ADD instruction, it does not affect the condition code flags.

#### Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

#### Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ADDS	#1, ERd	0 B	0 0:erd			2
Register direct	ADDS	#2, ERd	0 B	8 0:erd			2
Register direct	ADDS	#4, ERd	0 B	9 0:erd			2

#### Notes

### 2.2.3 ADDX

**ADDX (ADD with eXtend carry)**

**Add with Carry**

#### Operation

$Rd + (EAs) + C \rightarrow Rd$

#### Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

#### Assembly-Language Format

ADDX <EAs>, Rd

#### Operand Size

Byte

**H:** Set to 1 if there is a carry at bit 3; otherwise cleared to 0.

**N:** Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

**Z:** Previous value remains unchanged if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

**V:** Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

**C:** Set to 1 if there is a carry at bit 7; otherwise cleared to 0.

#### Description

This instruction adds the source operand and carry flag to the contents of an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd.

#### Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

#### Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	ADDX	#xx:8, Rd	9 : rd	IMM			2
Register direct	ADDX	Rs, Rd	0 : E	rs : rd			2

#### Notes

**2.2.4 (1) AND (B)****AND (AND logical)****Logical AND****Operation**

$$Rd \wedge (EAs) \rightarrow Rd$$
**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

$$AND.B \langle EAs \rangle, Rd$$

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Byte

**Description**

This instruction ANDs the source operand with the contents of an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	AND.B	#xx:8, Rd	E ; rd	IMM			2
Register direct	AND.B	Rs, Rd	1 ; 6	rs ; rd			2

**Notes**

**2.2.4 (2) AND (W)****AND (AND logical)****Logical AND****Operation** $Rd \wedge (EAs) \rightarrow Rd$ **Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

AND.W &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

**Operand Size**

Word

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction ANDs the source operand with the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	AND.W	#xx:16, Rd	7 : 9	6 : rd	IMM		4
Register direct	AND.W	Rs, Rd	6 : 6	rs : rd			2

**Notes**

## 2.2.4 (3) AND (L)

### AND (AND logical)

### Logical AND

#### Operation

$ERd \wedge (EAs) \rightarrow ERd$

#### Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	0	—

#### Assembly-Language Format

AND.L <EAs>, ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

#### Operand Size

Longword

#### Description

This instruction ANDs the source operand with the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd.

#### Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

ERs: ER0 to ER7

#### Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format						No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	
Immediate	AND.L	#xx:32, ERd	7   A	6   0   erd	IMM				6
Register direct	AND.L	Rs, ERd	0   1	F   0	6   6	0   ers   0   erd			4

#### Notes

## 2.2.5 ANDC

ANDC (AND Control register)

Logical AND with CCR

**Operation**CCR  $\wedge$  #IMM  $\rightarrow$  CCR**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

ANDC #xx:8, CCR

**Operand Size**

Byte

I: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

UI: Stores the corresponding bit of the result

H: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

U: Stores the corresponding bit of the result

N: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

Z: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

V: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

C: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

**Description**

This instruction ANDs the contents of the condition-code register (CCR) with immediate data and stores the result in the condition-code register. No interrupt requests, including NMI, are accepted immediately after execution of this instruction.

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	ANDC	#xx:8, CCR	0 : 6	IMM			2

**Notes**



## 2.2.6 BAND

### BAND (Bit AND)

### Bit Logical AND

#### Operation

$$C \wedge (\text{<bit No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow C$$

#### Assembly-Language Format

$$\text{BAND \#xx:3, <EAd>}$$

#### Operand Size

Byte

#### Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	↕

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

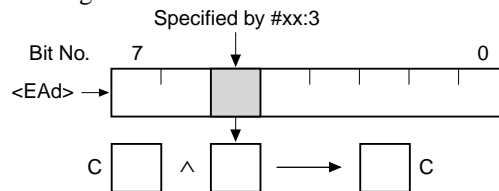
Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Stores the result of the operation.

#### Description

This instruction ANDs a specified bit in the destination operand with the carry bit and stores the result in the carry bit. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. The destination operand contents remain unchanged.



#### Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

#### Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	BAND	#xx:3.Rd	7 : 6	0:IMM: rd			2
Register indirect	BAND	#xx:3.@ERd	7 : C	0:erd: 0	7 : 6	0:IMM: 0	6
Absolute address	BAND	#xx:3.@aa:8	7 : E	abs	7 : 6	0:IMM: 0	6

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

#### Notes

See the corresponding LSI hardware manual for details on the access range for @aa : 8.

## 2.2.7 Bcc

**Bcc (Branch conditionally)****Conditional Branch****Operation**

If condition is true, then  
 $PC + disp \rightarrow PC$   
 else next;

**Assembly-Language Format**

`Bcc disp`  
 $\rightarrow$  Condition field

**Operand Size**

—

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

If the condition specified in the condition field (cc) is true, a displacement is added to the program counter (PC) and execution branches to the resulting address. The PC value used in the address calculation is the starting address of the instruction immediately following the Bcc instruction. The displacement is a signed 8-bit or 16-bit value. The branch destination address can be located in the range from  $-126$  to  $+128$  bytes or  $-32766$  to  $+32768$  bytes from the Bcc instruction.

Mnemonic	Meaning	cc	Condition	Signed/Unsigned*
BRA (BT)	Always (true)	0000	True	
BRn (BF)	Never (false)	0001	False	
BHI	High	0010	$C \vee Z = 0$	$X > Y$ (unsigned)
BLS	Low or Same	0011	$C \vee Z = 1$	$X \leq Y$ (unsigned)
BCC (BHS)	Carry Clear (High or Same)	0100	$C = 0$	$X \geq Y$ (unsigned)
BCS (BLO)	Carry Set (LOW)	0101	$C = 1$	$X < Y$ (unsigned)
BNE	Not Equal	0110	$Z = 0$	$X \neq Y$ (unsigned or signed)
BEQ	Equal	0111	$Z = 1$	$X > Y$ (unsigned or signed)
BVC	oVerflow Clear	1000	$V = 0$	
BVS	oVerflow Set	1001	$V = 1$	
BPL	PLus	1010	$N = 0$	
BMI	Minus	1011	$N = 1$	
BGE	Greater or Equal	1100	$N \oplus V = 0$	$X \geq Y$ (signed)
BLT	Less Than	1101	$N \oplus V = 1$	$X < Y$ (signed)
BGT	Greater Than	1110	$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 0$	$X > Y$ (signed)
BLE	Less or Equal	1111	$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 1$	$X \leq Y$ (signed)

Note: \* If the immediately preceding instruction is a CMP instruction, X is the destination operand and Y is the source operand.

**Bcc****Bcc (Branch conditionally)****Conditional Branch****Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Program-counter relative	BRA (BT)	d:8	4	0	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	0	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BRN (BF)	d:8	4	1	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	1	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BHI	d:8	4	2	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	2	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BLS	d:8	4	3	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	3	0	disp
Program-counter relative	Bcc (BHS)	d:8	4	4	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	4	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BCS (BLO)	d:8	4	5	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	5	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BNE	d:8	4	6	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	6	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BEQ	d:8	4	7	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	7	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BVC	d:8	4	8	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	8	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BVS	d:8	4	9	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	9	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BPL	d:8	4	A	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	A	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BMI	d:8	4	B	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	B	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BGE	d:8	4	C	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	C	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BLT	d:8	4	D	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	D	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BGT	d:8	4	E	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	E	0	disp
Program-counter relative	BLE	d:8	4	F	disp		4
		d:16	5	8	F	0	disp

**Notes**

1. The branch destination address must be even.
2. In machine language BRA, BRN, BCC, and BCS are identical to BT, BF, BHS, and BLO, respectively. The number of execution states for BRn (BF) is the same as for two NOP instructions.

## 2.2.8 BCLR

## BCLR (Bit CLear)

Bit Clear

## Operation

0 → (&lt;bit No.&gt; of &lt;EAd&gt;)

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

BCLR #xx:3, &lt;EAd&gt;

BCLR Rn, &lt;EAd&gt;

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

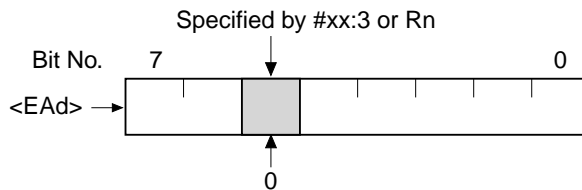
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Byte

## Description

This instruction clears a specified bit in the destination operand to 0. The bit number can be specified by 3-bit immediate data, or by the lower three bits of a general register (Rn). The specified bit is not tested. The condition-code flags are not altered.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rn: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**BCLR****BCLR (Bit CLear)****Bit Clear****Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	BCLR	#xx:3, Rd	7 : 2	0 : IMM : rd			2
Register indirect	BCLR	#xx:3, @ERd	7 : D	0 : erd : 0	7 : 2	0 : IMM : 0	8
Absolute address	BCLR	#xx:3, @aa:8	7 : F	abs	7 : 2	0 : IMM : 0	8
Register direct	BCLR	Rn, Rd	6 : 2	rn : rd			2
Register indirect	BCLR	Rn, @ERd	7 : D	0 : erd : 0	6 : 2	rn : 0	8
Absolute address	BCLR	Rn, @aa:8	7 : F	abs	6 : 2	rn : 0	8

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

**Notes**

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.9 BIAND

## BIAND (Bit Invert AND)

## Bit Logical AND

## Operation

$$C \wedge [\neg (\text{<bit No.> of <EAd>})] \rightarrow C$$

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

$$\text{BIAND } \#xx:3, \text{<EAd>}$$

## Operand Size

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

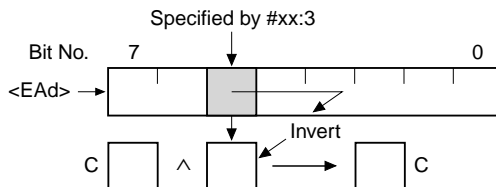
Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Stores the result of the operation.

## Description

This instruction ANDs the inverse of a specified bit in the destination operand with the carry bit and stores the result in the carry bit. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. The destination operand contents remain unchanged.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte			
Register direct	BIAND	#xx:3.Rd	7	6	1;IMM; rd		2		
Register indirect	BIAND	#xx:3.@ERd	7	C	0;erd; 0	7	6	1;IMM; 0	6
Absolute address	BIAND	#xx:3.@aa:8	7	E	abs	7	6	1;IMM; 0	6

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

## Notes

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.10 BILD

**BILD (Bit Invert Load)****Bit Load****Operation** $\neg$  (<bit No.> of <EAd>)  $\rightarrow$  C**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	↕

**Assembly-Language Format**

BILD #xx:3, &lt;EAd&gt;

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

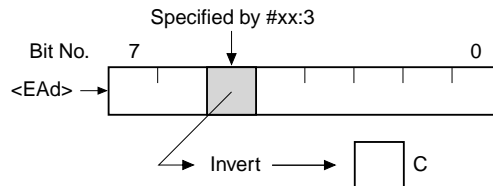
Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Loaded with the inverse of the specified bit.

**Description**

This instruction loads the inverse of a specified bit from the destination operand into the carry bit. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. The destination operand contents remain unchanged.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	BILD	#xx:3.Rd	7 : 7	1:IMM: rd			2
Register indirect	BILD	#xx:3.@ERd	7 : C	0:erd: 0	7 : 7	1:IMM: 0	6
Absolute address	BILD	#xx:3.@aa:8	7 : E	abs	7 : 7	1:IMM: 0	6

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand &lt;EAd&gt;.

**Notes**

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.11 BIOR

## BIOR (Bit Invert inclusive OR)

## Bit Logical OR

## Operation

$$C \vee [\neg (\text{<bit No.> of <EAd>})] \rightarrow C$$

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

$$\text{BIOR } \#xx:3, \text{<EAd>}$$

## Operand Size

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

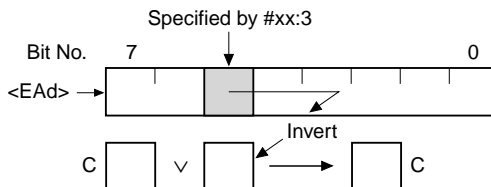
Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Stores the result of the operation.

## Description

This instruction ORs the inverse of a specified bit in the destination operand with the carry bit and stores the result in the carry bit. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. The destination operand contents remain unchanged.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte			
Register direct	BIOR	#xx:3.Rd	7	4	1::IMM:: rd		2		
Register indirect	BIOR	#xx:3.@ERd	7	C	0:erd: 0	7	4	1::IMM:: 0	6
Absolute address	BIOR	#xx:3.@aa:8	7	E	abs	7	4	1::IMM:: 0	6

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

## Notes

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.



## 2.2.12 BIST

**BIST (Bit Invert SToRE)****Bit Store****Operation**
 $\neg C \rightarrow (\text{<bit No.> of <EAd>})$ 
**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

BIST #xx:3, &lt;EAd&gt;

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

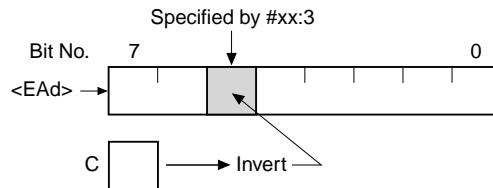
Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction stores the inverse of the carry bit in a specified bit location in the destination operand. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. Other bits in the destination operand remain unchanged.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	BIST	#xx:3,Rd	6 : 7	1:IMM: rd			2
Register indirect	BIST	#xx:3,@ERd	7 : D	0:erd: 0	6 : 7	1:IMM: 0	8
Absolute address	BIST	#xx:3,@aa:8	7 : F	abs	6 : 7	1:IMM: 0	8

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

**Notes**

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.13 BIXOR

## BIXOR (Bit Invert eXclusive OR)

## Bit Exclusive Logical OR

## Operation

$$C \oplus [\neg (\text{<bit No.> of <EAd>})] \rightarrow C$$

## Assembly-Language Format

$$\text{BIXOR } \#xx:3, \text{<EAd>}$$

## Operand Size

Byte

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	↕

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

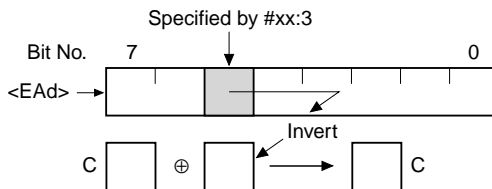
Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Stores the result of the operation.

## Description

This instruction exclusively ORs the inverse of a specified bit in the destination operand with the carry bit and stores the result in the carry bit. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. The destination operand contents remain unchanged.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte			
Register direct	BIXOR	#xx:3,Rd	7	5	1:IMM: rd		2		
Register indirect	BIXOR	#xx:3,@ERd	7	C	0:erd: 0	7	5	1:IMM: 0	6
Absolute address	BIXOR	#xx:3,@aa:8	7	E	abs	7	5	1:IMM: 0	6

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

## Notes

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.14 BLD

## BLD (Bit Load)

Bit Load

## Operation

(&lt;Bit No.&gt; of &lt;EAd&gt;) → C

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

BLD #xx:3, &lt;EAd&gt;

## Operand Size

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

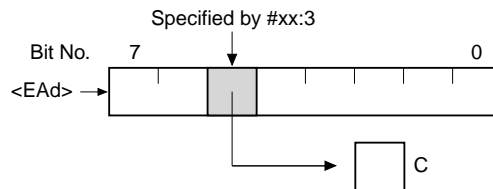
Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Loaded from the specified bit.

## Description

This instruction loads a specified bit from the destination operand into the carry bit. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. The destination operand contents remain unchanged.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	BLD	#xx:3,Rd	7 : 7	0:IMM: rd			2
Register indirect	BLD	#xx:3,@ERd	7 : C	0:erd: 0	7 : 7	0:IMM: 0	6
Absolute address	BLD	#xx:3,@aa:8	7 : E	abs	7 : 7	0:IMM: 0	6

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

## Notes

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.15 BNOT

## BNOT (Bit NOT)

Bit NOT

## Operation

 $\neg$  (<bit No.> of <EAd>)  $\rightarrow$  (<bit No.> of <EAd>)

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

BNOT #xx:3, &lt;EAd&gt;

BNOT Rn, &lt;EAd&gt;

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

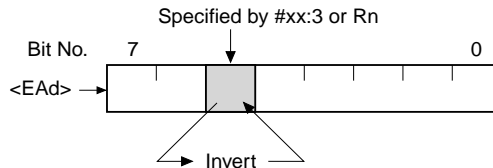
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Byte

## Description

This instruction inverts a specified bit in the destination operand. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or by the lower 3 bits of a general register. The specified bit is not tested. The condition code remains unchanged.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rn: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**BNOT****BNOT (Bit NOT)****Bit NOT****Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	BNOT	#xx:3, Rd	7 : 1	0:IMM: rd			2
Register indirect	BNOT	#xx:3, @ERd	7 : D	0:erd: 0	7 : 1	0:IMM: 0	8
Absolute address	BNOT	#xx:3, @aa:8	7 : F	abs	7 : 1	0:IMM: 0	8
Register direct	BNOT	Rn, Rd	6 : 1	rn : rd			2
Register indirect	BNOT	Rn, @ERd	7 : D	0:erd: 0	6 : 1	rn : 0	8
Absolute address	BNOT	Rn, @aa:8	7 : F	abs	6 : 1	rn : 0	8

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

**Notes**

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.16 BOR

## BOR (bit inclusive OR)

## Bit Logical OR

## Operation

$$C \vee [(\text{<bit No.> of <EAd>}] \rightarrow C$$

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

$$\text{BOR } \#xx:3, \text{<EAd>}$$

## Operand Size

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

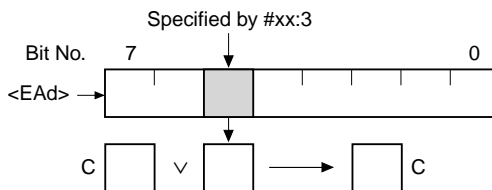
Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Stores the result of the operation.

## Description

This instruction ORs a specified bit in the destination operand with the carry bit and stores the result in the carry bit. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. The destination operand contents remain unchanged.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte			
Register direct	BOR	#xx:3,Rd	7	4	0;IMM; rd		2		
Register indirect	BOR	#xx:3,@ERd	7	C	0;erd; 0	7	4	0;IMM; 0	6
Absolute address	BOR	#xx:3,@aa:8	7	E	abs	7	4	0;IMM; 0	6

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

## Notes

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.17 BSET

**BSET (Bit SET)****Bit Set****Operation**

1 → (&lt;bit No.&gt; of &lt;EAd&gt;)

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

BSET #xx:3, &lt;EAd&gt;

BSET Rn, &lt;EAd&gt;

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

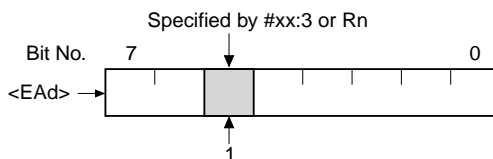
Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction sets a specified bit in the destination operand to 1. The bit number can be specified by 3-bit immediate data, or by the lower three bits of a general register. The specified bit is not tested. The condition code flags are not altered.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rn: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**BSET****BSET (Bit SET)****Bit Set****Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	BSET	#xx:3, Rd	7 : 0	0 : IMM : rd			2
Register indirect	BSET	#xx:3, @ERd	7 : D	0 : erd : 0	7 : 0	0 : IMM : 0	8
Absolute address	BSET	#xx:3, @aa:8	7 : F	abs	7 : 0	0 : IMM : 0	8
Register direct	BSET	Rn, Rd	6 : 0	rn : rd			2
Register indirect	BSET	Rn, @ERd	7 : D	0 : erd : 0	6 : 0	rn : 0	8
Absolute address	BSET	Rn, @aa:8	7 : F	abs	6 : 0	rn : 0	8

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

**Notes**

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

<EAd> is byte data in a register or on memory.



## 2.2.18 BSR

### BSR (Branch to SubRoutine)

### Branch to Subroutine

#### Operation

PC → @-SP

PC + disp → PC

#### Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

#### Assembly-Language Format

BSR disp

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

#### Operand Size

—

#### Description

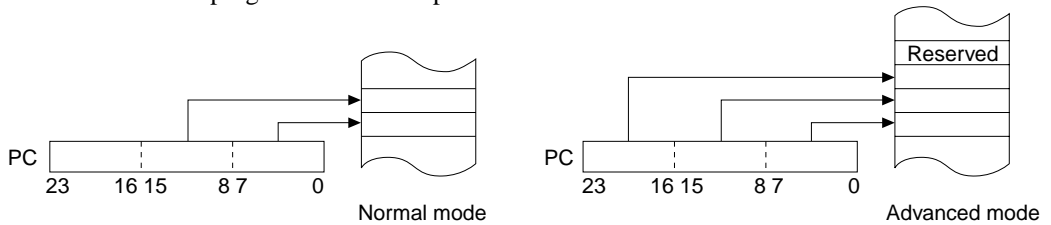
This instruction branches to a subroutine at a specified address. It pushes the program counter (PC) value onto the stack as a restart address, then adds a specified displacement to the PC value and branches to the resulting address. The PC value pushed onto the stack is the address of the instruction following the BSR instruction. The displacement is a signed 8-bit or 16-bit value, so the possible branching range is -126 to +128 bytes or -32766 to +32768 bytes from the address of the BSR instruction.

#### Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States	
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	Normal	Advanced
Program-counter relative	BSR	d:8	5 : 5	disp			6	8
		d:16	5 : C	0 : 0	disp		8	10

**BSR****BSR (Branch to SubRoutine)****Branch to Subroutine****Notes**

The stack structure differs between normal mode and advanced mode. In normal mode only the lower 16 bits of the program counter are pushed on the stack.



The branch address must be even.

## 2.2.19 BST

## BST (Bit Store)

Bit Store

## Operation

C → (&lt;bit No.&gt; of &lt;EAd&gt;)

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

BST #xx:3, &lt;EAd&gt;

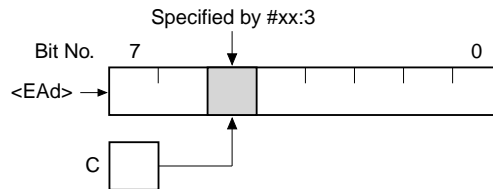
## Operand Size

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 N: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 Z: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 V: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Description

This instruction stores the carry bit in a specified bit location in the destination operand. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. Other bits in the destination operand remain unchanged.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	BST	#xx:3,Rd	6 : 7	0:IMM: rd			2
Register indirect	BST	#xx:3,@ERd	7 : D	0:erd: 0	6 : 7	0:IMM: 0	8
Absolute address	BST	#xx:3,@aa:8	7 : F	abs	6 : 7	0:IMM: 0	8

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

## Notes

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.20 BTST

## BTST (Bit TeST)

Bit Test

## Operation

 $\neg(\langle\text{Bit No.}\rangle \text{ of } \langle\text{EAd}\rangle) \rightarrow Z$ 

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	↕	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

BTST #xx:3, &lt;EAd&gt;

BTST Rn, &lt;EAd&gt;

## Operand Size

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

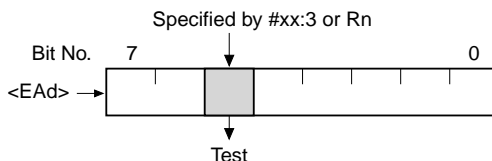
Z: Set to 1 if the specified bit is zero;  
otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Description

This instruction tests a specified bit in the destination operand and sets or clears the Z flag according to the result. The bit number can be specified by 3-bit immediate data, or by the lower three bits of a general register. The destination operand remains unchanged.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rn: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**BTST****BTST (Bit TeST)****Bit Test****Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	BTST	#xx:3, Rd	7 : 3	0 : IMM : rd			2
Register indirect	BTST	#xx:3, @ERd	7 : C	0 : erd : 0	7 : 3	0 : IMM : 0	6
Absolute address	BTST	#xx:3, @aa:8	7 : E	abs	7 : 3	0 : IMM : 0	6
Register direct	BTST	Rn, Rd	6 : 3	rn : rd			2
Register indirect	BTST	Rn, @ERd	7 : C	0 : erd : 0	6 : 3	rn : 0	6
Absolute address	BTST	Rn, @aa:8	7 : E	abs	6 : 3	rn : 0	6

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

**Notes**

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.21 BXOR

## BXOR (Bit eXclusive OR)

## Bit Exclusive Logical OR

## Operation

$$C \oplus (\text{<bit No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow C$$

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

$$\text{BXOR } \#xx:3, \text{<EAd>}$$

## Operand Size

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

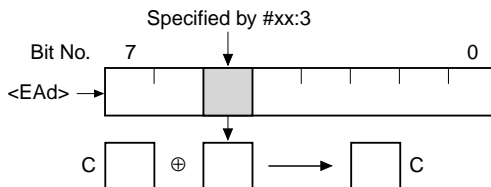
Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Stores the result of the operation.

## Description

This instruction exclusively ORs a specified bit in the destination operand with the carry bit and stores the result in the carry bit. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. The destination operand contents remain unchanged.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode*	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte			
Register direct	BXOR	#xx:3,Rd	7	5	0:IMM; rd		2		
Register indirect	BXOR	#xx:3,@ERd	7	C	0:erd; 0	7	5	0:IMM; 0	6
Absolute address	BXOR	#xx:3,@aa:8	7	E	abs	7	5	0:IMM; 0	6

Note: \* The addressing mode is the addressing mode of the destination operand <EAd>.

## Notes

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

**2.2.22 (1) CMP (B)****CMP (CoMPare)****Compare****Operation**

Rd – (EAs), set or clear CCR

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

CMP.B &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 3;  
otherwise cleared to 0.N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise  
cleared to 0.Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise  
cleared to 0.V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise  
cleared to 0.C: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 7;  
otherwise cleared to 0.**Description**

This instruction subtracts the source operand from the contents of an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) and sets or clears the CCR bits according to the result. The destination register contents remain unchanged.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	CMP.B	#xx:8, Rd	A : rd	IMM			2
Register direct	CMP.B	Rs, Rd	1 : C	rs : rd			2

**Notes**

## 2.2.22 (2) CMP (W)

## CMP (CoMPare)

Compare

## Operation

Rd – (EAs), set CCR

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

## Assembly-Language Format

CMP.W &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

## Operand Size

Word

H: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 11; otherwise cleared to 0.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 15; otherwise cleared to 0.

## Description

This instruction subtracts the source operand from the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) and sets or clears the CCR bits according to the result. The contents of the 16-bit register Rd remain unchanged.

## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	CMP.W	#xx:16, Rd	7 : 9	2 : rd	IMM		4
Register direct	CMP.W	Rs, Rd	1 : D	rs : rd			2

## Notes



**2.2.22 (3) CMP (L)****CMP (CoMPare)****Compare****Operation**

ERd – (EAs), set CCR

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑↓	—	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓

**Assembly-Language Format**

CMP .L &lt;EAs&gt;, ERd

- I: Previous value remains unchanged.  
H: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 27; otherwise cleared to 0.  
N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.  
Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.  
V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.  
C: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 31; otherwise cleared to 0.

**Operand Size**

Longword

**Description**

This instruction subtracts the source operand from the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) and sets or clears the CCR bits according to the result. The contents of the 32-bit register ERd remain unchanged.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

ERs: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format						No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	
Immediate	CMP.L	#xx:32, ERd	7 : A	2 : 0 : erd	IMM				6
Register direct	CMP.L	ERs, ERd	1 : F	1 : ers, 0 : erd					2

**Notes**

## 2.2.23 DAA

**DAA (Decimal Adjust Add)****Decimal Adjust****Operation**

Rd (decimal adjust) → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	*	—	↕	↕	*	↕

**Assembly-Language Format**

DAA Rd

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Undetermined (no guaranteed value).

N: Set to 1 if the adjusted result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the adjusted result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Undetermined (no guaranteed value).

C: Set to 1 if there is a carry at bit 7; otherwise left unchanged.

**Description**

Given that the result of an addition operation performed by an ADD.B or ADDX instruction on 4-bit BCD data is contained in an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) and the carry and half-carry flags, the DAA instruction adjusts the general register contents by adding H'00, H'06, H'60, or H'66 according to the table below.

C Flag before Adjustment	Upper 4 Bits before Adjustment	H Flag before Adjustment	Lower 4 Bits before Adjustment	Value Added (hexadecimal)	C Flag after Adjustment
0	0 to 9	0	0 to 9	00	0
0	0 to 8	0	A to F	06	0
0	0 to 9	1	0 to 3	06	0
0	A to F	0	0 to 9	60	1
0	9 to F	0	A to F	66	1
0	A to F	1	0 to 3	66	1
1	1 to 2	0	0 to 9	60	1
1	1 to 2	0	A to F	66	1
1	1 to 3	1	0 to 3	66	1

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**DAA****DAA (Decimal Adjust Add)****Decimal Adjust****Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	DAA	Rd	0 : F	0 : rd			2

**Notes**

Valid results (8-bit register Rd contents and C, V, Z, N, and H flags) are not assured if this instruction is executed under conditions other than those described above.

## 2.2.24 DAS

## DAS (Decimal Adjust Subtract)

Decimal Adjust

## Operation

Rd (decimal adjust) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	*	—	↕	↕	*	—

## Assembly-Language Format

DAS Rd

## Operand Size

Byte

H: Undetermined (no guaranteed value).

N: Set to 1 if the adjusted result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the adjusted result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Undetermined (no guaranteed value).

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Description

Given that the result of a subtraction operation performed by a SUB.B, SUBX.B, or NEG.B instruction on 4-bit BCD data is contained in an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) and the carry and half-carry flags, the DAS instruction adjusts the general register contents by adding H'00, H'FA, H'A0, or H'9A according to the table below.

C Flag before Adjustment	Upper 4 Bits before Adjustment	H Flag before Adjustment	Lower 4 Bits before Adjustment	Value Added (hexadecimal)	C Flag after Adjustment
0	0 to 9	0	0 to 9	00	0
0	0 to 8	1	6 to F	FA	0
1	7 to F	0	0 to 9	A0	1
1	6 to F	1	6 to F	9A	1

## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**DAS****DAS (Decimal Adjust Subtract)****Decimal Adjust****Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	DAS	Rd	1 : F	0 : rd			2

**Notes**

Valid results (8-bit register Rd contents and C, V, Z, N, and H flags) are not assured if this instruction is executed under conditions other than those described above.

**2.2.25 (1) DEC (B)****DEC (DECrement)****Decrement****Operation**

Rd - 1 → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

DEC.B Rd

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs (the previous value in Rd was H'80); otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction decrements an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	DEC.B	Rd	1 ↓ A	0 ↓ rd			2

**Notes**

An overflow is caused by the operation H'80 - 1 → H'7F.

## 2.2.25 (2) DEC (W)

## DEC (DECrement)

Decrement

## Operation

Rd - 1 → Rd

Rd - 2 → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↑	↑	—

## Assembly-Language Format

DEC.W #1, Rd

DEC.W #2, Rd

## Operand Size

Word

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs (the previous value in Rd was H'8000); otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Description

This instruction subtracts the immediate value 1 or 2 from the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd.

## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	DEC.W	#1, Rd	1 : B	5 : rd			2
Register direct	DEC.W	#2, Rd	1 : B	D : rd			2

## Notes

An overflow is caused by the operations H'8000 - 1 → H'7FFF, H'8000 - 2 → H'7FFE, and H'8001 - 2 → H'7FFF.

**2.2.25 (3) DEC (L)****DEC (DECrement)****Decrement****Operation**

ERd - 1 → ERd

ERd - 2 → ERd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

DEC.L #1, ERd

DEC.L #2, ERd

**Operand Size**

Longword

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction subtracts the immediate value 1 or 2 from the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	DEC.L	#1, ERd	1 : B	7 : 0 : erd			2
Register direct	DEC.L	#2, ERd	1 : B	F : 0 : erd			2

**Notes**

An overflow is caused by the operations H'80000000 - 1 → H'7FFFFFFF, H'80000000 - 2 → H'7FFFFFFE, and H'80000001 - 2 → H'7FFFFFFF.



## 2.2.26 (1) DIVXS (B)

## DIVXS (DIVide eXtend as Signed)

Divide Signed

## Operation

 $Rd \div Rs \rightarrow Rd$ 

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

DIVXS.B Rs, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the quotient is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the divisor is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

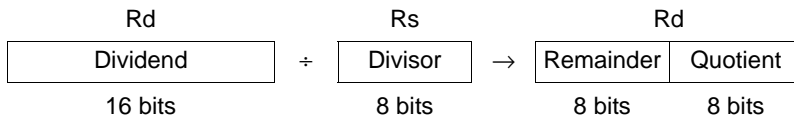
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Byte

## Description

This instruction divides the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) by the contents of an 8-bit register Rs (source register) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd. The division is signed. The operation performed is 16 bits  $\div$  8 bits  $\rightarrow$  8-bit quotient and 8-bit remainder. The quotient is placed in the lower 8 bits of Rd. The remainder is placed in the upper 8 bits of Rd.



Valid results are not assured if division by zero is attempted or an overflow occurs. For information on avoiding overflow, see DIVXS Instruction, Zero Divide, and Overflow.

## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**DIVXS (B)****DIVXS (DIVide eXtend as Signed)****Divide Signed****Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format								No. of States
			1st byte		2nd byte		3rd byte		4th byte		
Register direct	DIVXS.B	Rs, Rd	0	1	D	0	5	1	rs	rd	16

**Notes**

The N flag is set to 1 if the dividend and divisor have different signs, and cleared to 0 if they have the same sign. The N flag may therefore be set to 1 when the quotient is zero.

## 2.2.26 (2) DIVXS (W)

## DIVXS (DIVide eXtend as Signed)

Divide Signed

## Operation

 $ERd \div Rs \rightarrow ERd$ 

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

DIVXS.W Rs, ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the quotient is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the divisor is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

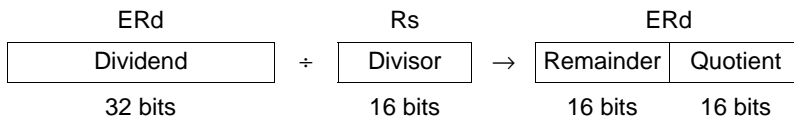
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction divides the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) by the contents of a 16-bit register Rs (source register) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd. The division is signed. The operation performed is 32 bits  $\div$  16 bits  $\rightarrow$  16-bit quotient and 16-bit remainder. The quotient is placed in the lower 16 bits (Rd) of the 32-bit register ERd. The remainder is placed in the upper 16 bits (Ed).



Valid results are not assured if division by zero is attempted or an overflow occurs. For information on avoiding overflow, see DIVXS Instruction, Zero Divide, and Overflow.

## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**DIVXS (W)****DIVXS (DIVide eXtend as Signed)****Divide Signed****Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	DIVXS.W	Rs, ERd	0 : 1	D : 0	5 : 3	rs : 0 : erd	24

**Notes**

The N flag is set to 1 if the dividend and divisor have different signs, and cleared to 0 if they have the same sign. The N flag may therefore be set to 1 when the quotient is zero.

## 2.2.26 (3) DIVXS

**DIVXS (DIVide eXtend as Signed)****Divide Signed****DIVXS instruction, Division by Zero, and Overflow**

Since the DIVXS instruction does not detect division by zero or overflow, applications should detect and handle division by zero and overflow using techniques similar to those used in the following program.

**1. Programming solution for DIVXS.B R0L, R1**

**Example 1:** Convert dividend and divisor to non-negative numbers, then use DIVXU programming solution for zero divide and overflow

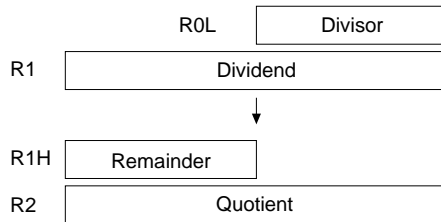
```

MOV.B    R0L, R0L    ; Test divisor
BEQ      ZERODIV    ; Branch to ZERODIV if R0L = 0
ANDC     #AF, CCR    ; Clear CCR user bits (bits 6 and 4) to 0
BPL      L1         ; Branch to L1 if N flag = 0 (positive divisor)
NEG.B    R0L        ; Take 2's complement of R0L to make sign positive
ORC      #10, CCR    ; Set CCR bit 4 to 1
L1: MOV.W R1.R1     ; Test dividend
BPL      L2         ; Branch to L2 if N flag = 0 (positive dividend)
NEG.W    R1         ; Take 2's complement of R1 to make sign positive
XORC     #50, CCR    ; Invert CCR bits 6 and 4
L2: MOV.B R1H, R2L   ;
EXTU.W   R2         ;
DIVXU.B  R0L, R2     ; Use DIVXU.B instruction to divide non-negative dividend
MOV.B    R2H, R1H    ; by positive divisor
DIVXU.B  R0L, R1     ; 16 bits ÷ 8 bits → quotient (16 bits) and remainder (8 bits)
MOV.B    R2L, R2H    ; (See DIVXU Instruction, Zero Divide, and Overflow)
MOV.B    R1L, R2L    ;
STC      CCR, R1L    ; Copy CCR contents to R1L
BTST     #6, R1L     ; Test CCR bit 6
BEQ      L3         ; Branch to L3 if bit 6 = 1
NEG.B    R1H        ; Take 2's complement of R1H to make sign of remainder negative
L3: BTST  #4, R1L    ; Test CCR bit 4
BEQ      L4         ; Branch to L4 if bit 4 = 1
NEG.W    R2         ; Take 2's complement of R2 to make sign of quotient negative
L4: RTS
ZERODIV: ; Zero-divide handling routine

```

**DIVXS****DIVXS (DIVide eXtend as Signed)****Divide Signed**

This program leaves a 16-bit quotient in R2 and an 8-bit remainder in R1H.



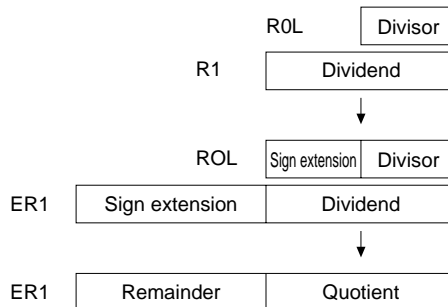
**Example 2:** Sign extend the 8-bit divisor to 16 bits, sign extend the 16-bit dividend to 32 bits, and then use DIVXS to divide

```

EXTS.W   R0
BEQ      ZERODIV
EXTS.L   ER1
DIVXS.L  R0,ER1
RTS
  
```

ZERODIV:

This program leaves the 16-bit quotient in R1 and the 8-bit remainder in E1 (in a 16-bit sign extended format).



**DIVXS****DIVXS (DIVide eXtend as Signed)****Divide Signed****2. Programming solution for DIVXS.W R0, ER1**

**Example:** Convert dividend and divisor to non-negative numbers, then use DIVXU programming solution for zero divide and overflow

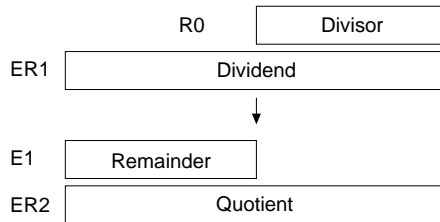
```

MOV.W      R0, R0      ; Test divisor
BEQ        ZERODIV    ; Branch to ZERODIV if R0 = 0
ANDC      #AF, CCR    ; Clear CCR user bits (bits 6 and 4) to 0
BPL       L1         ; Branch to L1 if N flag = 0 (positive divisor)
NEG.W     R0         ; Take 2's complement of R0 to make sign positive
ORC       #10, CCR    ; Set CCR bit 4 to 1
L1: MOV.L  ER1, ER1    ; Test dividend
BPL       L2         ; Branch to L2 if N flag = 0 (positive dividend)
NEG.L     ER1        ; Take 2's complement of ER1 to make sign positive
XORC     #50, CCR    ; Invert CCR bits 6 and 4
L2: MOV.W  E1, R2     ;
EXTU.L   ER2         ;
DIVXU.W  R0, E2      ; Use DIVXU.W instruction to divide non-negative dividend
MOV.W    E2, R1      ; by positive divisor
DIVXU.W  R0, ER1     ; 32 bits ÷ 16 bits → quotient (32 bits) and remainder
MOV.W    R2, E2      ; (16 bits)
MOV.W    R1, R2      ; (See DIVXU Instruction, Zero Divide, and Overflow)
STC      CCR, R1L    ; Copy CCR contents to R1L
BTST    #6, R1L     ; Test CCR bit 6
BEQ     L3         ; Branch to L3 if bit 6 = 1
NEG.W   E1         ; Take 2's complement of E1 to make sign of remainder negative
L3: BTST #4, R1L    ; Test CCR bit 4
BEQ     L4         ; Branch to L4 if bit 4 = 1
NEG.L   ER2        ; Take 2's complement of ER2 to make sign of quotient negative
L4: RTS
ZERODIV: ; Zero-divide handling routine

```

**DIVXS****DIVXS (DIVide eXtend as Signed)****Divide Signed**

This program leaves a 32-bit quotient in ER2 and a 16-bit remainder in E1.



The preceding two examples flag the status of the divisor and dividend in the UI and U bits in the CCR, and modify the sign of the quotient and remainder in the unsigned division result of the DIVXU instruction as shown next.

UI	U	Divisor	Dividend	Remainder	Quotient	Sign Modification
0	0	Positive	Positive	Positive	Positive	No sign modification
0	1	Negative	Positive	Positive	Negative	Sign of quotient is reversed
1	0	Negative	Negative	Negative	Positive	Sign of remainder is reversed
1	1	Positive	Negative	Negative	Negative	Signs of quotient and remainder are both reversed



## 2.2.27 (1) DIVXU (B)

## DIVXU (DIVide eXtend as Unsigned)

Divide

## Operation

 $Rd \div Rs \rightarrow Rd$ 

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

DIVXU.B Rs, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the divisor is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the divisor is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

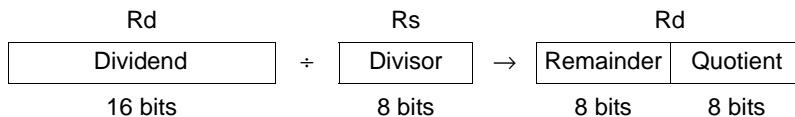
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Byte

## Description

This instruction divides the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) by the contents of an 8-bit register Rs (source register) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd. The division is unsigned. The operation performed is 16 bits  $\div$  8 bits  $\rightarrow$  8-bit quotient and 8-bit remainder. The quotient is placed in the lower 8 bits of Rd. The remainder is placed in the upper 8 bits of Rd.



Valid results are not assured if division by zero is attempted or an overflow occurs. For information on avoiding overflow, see DIVXU Instruction, Zero Divide, and Overflow.

## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	DIVXU.B	Rs, Rd	5 : 1	rs : rd			14

## Notes

## 2.2.27 (2) DIVXU (W)

## DIVXU (DIVide eXtend as Unsigned)

Divide

## Operation

ERd  $\div$  Rs  $\rightarrow$  ERd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

DIVXU.W Rs, ERd

## Operand Size

Word

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the divisor is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

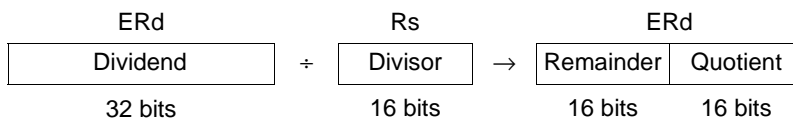
Z: Set to 1 if the divisor is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Description

This instruction divides the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) by the contents of a 16-bit register Rs (source register) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd. The division is unsigned. The operation performed is 32 bits  $\div$  16 bits  $\rightarrow$  16-bit quotient and 16-bit remainder. The quotient is placed in the lower 16 bits (Rd) of the 32-bit register ERd. The remainder is placed in the upper 8 bits of (Ed).



Valid results are not assured if division by zero is attempted or an overflow occurs. For information on avoiding overflow, see DIVXU Instruction, Zero Divide, and Overflow.

## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	DIVXU.W	Rs, ERd	5	3	rs	0:ERd	22

## Notes

**DIVXU****DIVXU (DIVide eXtend as Unsigned)****Divide****DIVXU Instruction, Zero Divide, and Overflow**

Zero divide and overflow are not detected in the DIVXU instruction. A program like the following can detect zero divisors and avoid overflow.

**1. Programming solutions for DIVXU.B R0L, R1**

**Example 1:** Divide upper 8 bits and lower 8 bits of 16-bit dividend separately and obtain 16-bit quotient

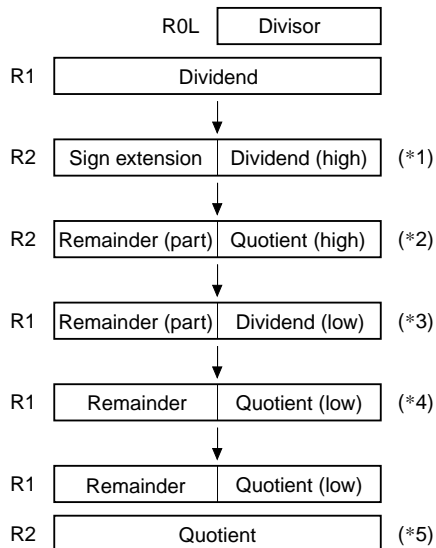
```

CMP.B    #0, R0L        ; R0L = 0? (Zero divisor?)
BEQ      ZERODIV        ; Branch to ZERODIV if R0L = 0
MOV.B    R1H, R2L        ; Copy upper 8 bits of dividend to R2L and
EXTU.W   R2 (*1).        ; zero-extend to 16 bits
DIVXU.B  R0L, R2 (*2)    ; Divide upper 8 bits of dividend
MOV.B    R2H, R1H (*3)   ; R2H → R1H (store partial remainder in R1H)
DIVXU.B  R0L, R1 (*4)    ; Divide lower 8 bits of dividend (including repeated
                        ; division of upper 8 bits)
MOV.B    R2L, R2H        ; Store upper part of quotient in R2H
MOV.B    R1L, R2L (*5)   ; Store lower part of quotient in R2L
RTS
ZERODIV: ; Zero-divide handling routine

```

**DIVXU****DIVXU (DIVide eXtend as Unsigned)****Divide**

The resulting operation is 16 bits ÷ 8 bits → quotient (16 bits) and remainder (8 bits), and no overflow occurs. The 16-bit quotient is stored in R2, the 8-bit remainder in R1H.



## DIVXU

## DIVXU (DIVide eXtend as Unsigned)

Divide

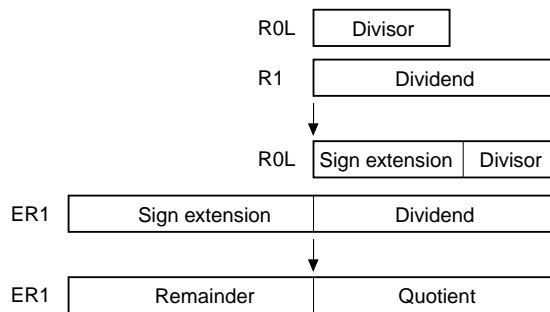
**Example 2:** Zero-extend divisor from 8 to 16 bits and dividend from 16 to 32 bits before dividing

```

EXTU.W    R0          ; Zero-extend 8-bit divisor to 16 bits
BEQ       ZERODIV    ; Branch to ZERODIV if R0 = 0
EXTU.L    ER1        ; Zero-extend 16-bit dividend to 32 bits
EXTU.W    R0, ER1    ; Divide using DIVXU.W
RTS
ZERODIV:  ; Zero-divide handling routine

```

Instead of 16 bits ÷ 8 bits, the operation performed is 32 bits ÷ 16 bits → quotient (16 bits) and remainder (16 bits), and no overflow occurs. The 16-bit quotient is stored in R1 and the 8-bit remainder in the lower 8 bits of E1. The upper 8 bits of E1 are all 0.



## DIVXU

## DIVXU (DIVide eXtend as Unsigned)

Divide

## 2. Programming solution for DIVXU.W R0, ER1

**Example 1:** Divide upper 16 bits and lower 16 bits of 32-bit dividend separately and obtain 32-bit quotient

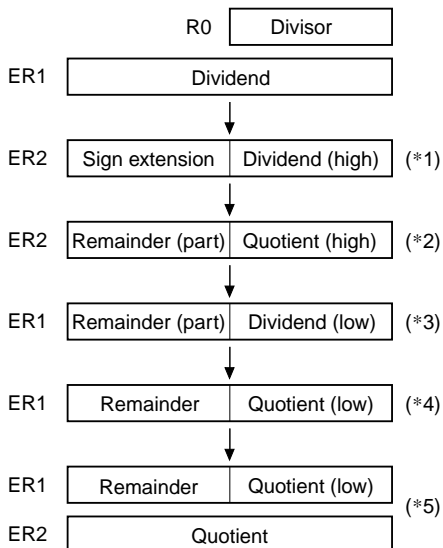
```

MOV.W    R0, R0          ; R0 = 0? (Zero divisor?)
BEQ      ZERODIV        ; Branch to ZERODIV if R0 = 0
MOV.W    E1, E2          ; Copy upper 16 bits of dividend to R2 and
EXTU.L   ER2            (*1) ; zero-extend to 32 bits
DIVXU.W  R0, ER2        (*2) ; Divide upper 16 bits of dividend
MOV.W    E2, E1        (*3) ; E2 → E1 (store partial remainder in E1)
DIVXU.W  R0, ER1        (*4) ; Divide lower 16 bits of dividend (including repeated
                             ; division of upper 16 bits)
MOV.W    R2, E2          ; Store upper part of quotient in E2
MOV.W    R1, R2        (*5) ; Store lower part of quotient in R2
RTS

ZERODIV:                  ; Zero-divide handling routine

```

The resulting operation is 32 bits ÷ 16 bits → quotient (32 bits) and remainder (16 bits), and no overflow occurs. The 32-bit quotient is stored in ER2, the 16-bit remainder in E1.



## 2.2.28 (1) EEPMOV (B)

## EEPMOV (MOVe data to EEPROM)

## Block Data Transfer

## Operation

if R4L  $\neq$  0 then  
 repeat       @ER5+  $\rightarrow$  @ER6+  
                   R4L - 1  $\rightarrow$  R4L  
 until R4L = 0  
 else next;

## Assembly-Language Format

EEPMOV .B

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

H: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 N: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 Z: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 V: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

## Description

This instruction performs a block memory transfer. It moves data from the memory location specified in ER5 to the memory location specified in ER6, increments ER5 and ER6, decrements R4L, and repeats these operations until R4L reaches zero. Execution then proceeds to the next instruction. No interrupts are detected while the block transfer is in progress. When the EEPMOV instruction ends, R4L contains 0, and ER5 and ER6 contain the last transfer address + 1. The data transfer is performed a byte at a time, with R4L indicating the number of bytes to be transferred. The byte symbol in the assembly-language format designates the size of R4L (and limits the maximum number of bytes that can be transferred to 255).

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
—	EEPMOV.B		7 : B	5 : C	5 : 9	8 : F	8+4n*

Note: \* n is the initial value of R4L. Although n bytes of data are transferred, memory is accessed 2(n + 1) times, requiring 4(n + 1) states. (n = 0, 1, 2, ..., 255).

## Notes

This instruction first reads the memory locations indicated by ER5 and ER6, then performs the data transfer. The number of states required for execution differs from the H8/300 CPU.

**2.2.28 (2) EEPMOV (W)****EEPMOV (MOVE data to EEPROM)****Block Data Transfer****Operation**

if R4  $\neq$  0 then  
 repeat       @ER5+  $\rightarrow$  @ER6+  
                   R4 - 1  $\rightarrow$  R4  
 until R4 = 0  
 else next;

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

H: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 N: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 Z: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 V: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Assembly-Language Format**

EEPMOV.W

**Operand Size****Description**

This instruction performs a block memory transfer. It moves data from the memory location specified in ER5 to the memory location specified in ER6, increments ER5 and ER6, decrements R4, and repeats these operations until R4 reaches zero. Execution then proceeds to the next instruction. No interrupts except NMI are detected while the block transfer is in progress. When the EEPMOV instruction ends, R4 contains 0, and ER5 and ER6 contain the last transfer address + 1. The data transfer is performed a byte at a time, with R4 indicating the number of bytes to be transferred. The word symbol in the assembly-language format designates the size of R4 (allowing a maximum 65535 bytes to be transferred).

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
—	EEPMOV.W		7 : B	D : 4	5 : 9	8 : F	8+4n

Note: n is the initial value of R4. Although n bytes of data are transferred, memory is accessed 2(n + 1) times, requiring 4(n + 1) states. (n = 0, 1, 2, ..., 65535).

**Notes**

This instruction first reads memory at the addresses indicated by ER5 and ER6, then carries out the block data transfer.



---

**EEPMOV (W)****EEPMOV (MOVE data to EEPROM)****Block Data Transfer**

---

**EEPMOV.W Instruction and NMI Interrupt**

If an NMI request occurs while the EEPMOV.W instruction is being executed, NMI interrupt exception handling is carried out at the end of the current read-write cycle. Register contents are then as follows:

- ER5: address of the next byte to be transferred
- ER6: destination address of the next byte
- R4: number of bytes remaining to be transferred

The program counter value pushed on the stack in NMI interrupt exception handling is the address of the next instruction after the EEPMOV.W instruction. Programs should be coded as follows to allow for NMI interrupts during execution of the EEPMOV.W instruction.

**Example:**

```
L1: EEPMOV.W
    MOV.W    R4, R4
    BNE     L1
```

During execution of the EEPMOV.B instruction no interrupts are accepted, including NMI.

**2.2.29 (1) EXTS (W)****EXTS (EXTend as Signed)****Sign Extension****Operation**

(&lt;Bit 7&gt; of Rd) → (&lt;bits 15 to 8&gt; of Rd)

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

EXTS.W Rd

**Operand Size**

Word

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

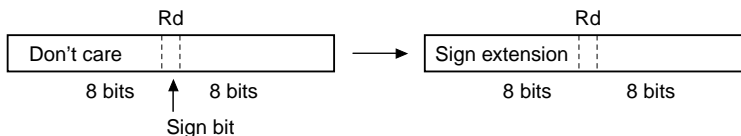
Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction copies the sign of the lower 8 bits in a 16-bit register Rd in the upward direction (copies Rd bit 7 to bits 15 to 8) to extend the data to signed word data.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	EXTS.W	Rd	1 : 7	D : rd			2

**Notes**

## 2.2.29 (2) EXTS (L)

## EXTS (EXTend as Signed)

## Sign Extension

## Operation

(<Bit 15> of ERd) → (<bits 31 to 16> of ERd)

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	0	—

## Assembly-Language Format

EXTS.L ERd

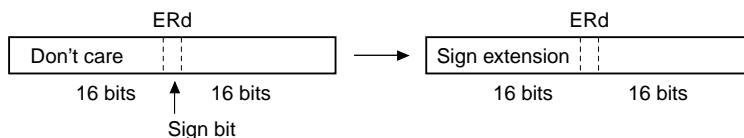
- I: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 H: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.  
 Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.  
 V: Always cleared to 0.  
 C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Longword

## Description

This instruction copies the sign of the lower 16 bits (general register Rd) in a 32-bit register ERd in the upward direction (copies ERd bit 15 to bits 31 to 16) to extend the data to signed longword data.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	EXTS.L	ERd	1	7	F	0:erd	2

## Notes

**2.2.30 (1) EXTU (W)****EXTU (EXTend as Unsigned)****Zero Extension****Operation**

0 → (&lt;bits 15 to 8&gt; of Rd)

Zero extend

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	0	↑	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

EXTU.W Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Always cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

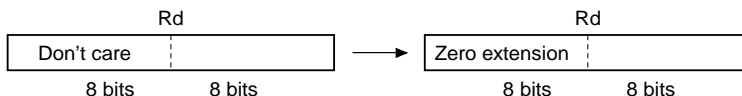
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Word

**Description**

This instruction extends the lower 8 bits in a 16-bit register Rd to word data by padding with zeros. That is, it clears the upper 8 bits of Rd (bits 15 to 8) to 0.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	EXTU.W	Rd	1 : 7	5 : rd			2

**Notes**

## 2.2.30 (2) EXTU (L)

## EXTU (EXTend as Unsigned)

## Zero Extension

## Operation

0 → (<bits 31 to 16> of ERd)  
Zero extend

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	0	↑	0	—

## Assembly-Language Format

EXTU.L ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Always cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

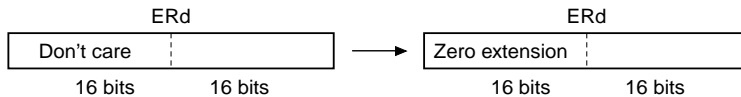
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Longword

## Description

This instruction extends the lower 16 bits (general register Rd) in a 32-bit register ERd to longword data by padding with zeros. That is, it clears the upper 16 bits of ERd (bits 31 to 16) to 0.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	EXTU.L	ERd	1 : 7	7 : 0;erd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.31 (1) INC (B)

## INC (INCRement)

Increment

## Operation

Rd + 1 → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↑	↑	—

## Assembly-Language Format

INC.B Rd

## Operand Size

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Description

This instruction increments an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd.

## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	INC.B	Rd	0 : A	0 : rd			2

## Notes

An overflow is caused by the operation H'7F + 1 → H'80.

## 2.2.31 (2) INC (W)

## INC (INCRement)

Increment

## Operation

Rd + 1 → Rd

Rd + 2 → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↑	↑	—

## Assembly-Language Format

INC.W #1, Rd

INC.W #2, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction adds the immediate value 1 or 2 to the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd.

## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	INC.W	#1, Rd	0 : B	5 : rd			2
Register direct	INC.W	#2, Rd	0 : B	D : rd			2

## Notes

An overflow is caused by the operations H'7FFF + 1 → H'8000, H'7FFF + 2 → H'8001, and H'7FFE + 2 → H'8000.

**2.2.31 (3) INC (L)****INC (INCRement)****Increment****Operation**

ERd + 1 → ERd

ERd + 2 → ERd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	↕	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

INC.L #1, ERd

INC.L #2, ERd

**Operand Size**

Longword

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction adds the immediate value 1 or 2 to the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	INC.L	#1, ERd	0 : B	7 : 0 : erd			2
Register direct	INC.L	#2, ERd	0 : B	F : 0 : erd			2

**Notes**

An overflow is caused by the operations H'7FFFFFFF + 1 → H'80000000, H'7FFFFFFF + 2 → H'80000001, and H'7FFFFFFE + 2 → H'80000000.



## 2.2.32 JMP

## JMP (JuMP)

## Unconditional Branch

## Operation

Effective address → PC

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

JMP &lt;EA&gt;

H: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 N: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 Z: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 V: Previous value remains unchanged.  
 C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

—

## Description

This instruction branches unconditionally to a specified address

## Available Registers

ERn: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States	
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	Normal	Advanced
Register indirect	JMP	@ERn	5 : 9	0 : em: 0			4	
Absolute address	JMP	@aa:24	5 : A	abs			6	
Memory indirect	JMP	@@aa:8	5 : B	abs			8	10

## Notes

The structure of the branch address and the number of states required for execution differ between normal mode and advanced mode.

The branch address must be even.

## 2.2.33 JSR

## JSR (Jump to SubRoutine)

## Jump to Subroutine

## Operation

PC → @-SP

Effective address → PC

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

JSR &lt;EA&gt;

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

## Description

This instruction pushes the program counter on the stack as a return address, then branches to a specified effective address. The program counter value pushed on the stack is the address of the instruction following the JSR instruction.

## Available Registers

ERn: ER0 to ER7

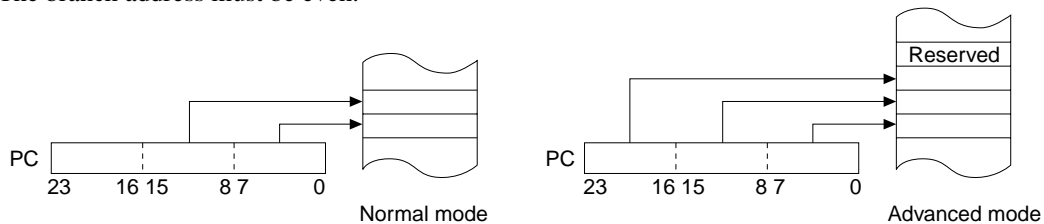
## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	Normal	Advanced	
Register indirect	JSR	@ERn	5	D	0; ERn; 0			6	8
Absolute address	JSR	@aa:24	5	E	abs			8	10
Memory indirect	JSR	@@aa:8	5	F	abs			8	12

**JSR****JSR (Jump to SubRoutine)****Jump to Subroutine****Notes**

Note that the structures of the stack and branch addresses differ between normal and advanced mode. Only the lower 16 bits of the PC are saved in normal mode.

The branch address must be even.



**2.2.34 (1) LDC (B)****LDC (Load to Control register)****Load CCR****Operation**

(EAs) → CCR

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕

**Assembly-Language Format**

LDC.B &lt;EAs&gt;, CCR

**Operand Size**

Byte

I: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.

H: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.

N: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.

Z: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.

V: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.

C: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.

**Description**

This instruction loads the source operand into the CCR.

Note that no interrupts, even NMI interrupts, will be accepted at the point that this instruction completes.

**Available Registers**

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	LDC.B	#xx:8, CCR	0 ∴ 7	IMM			2
Register direct	LDC.B	Rs, CCR	0 ∴ 3	0 ∴ rs			2

**Notes**

**2.2.34 (2) LDC (W)****LDC (LoaD to Control register)****Load CCR****Operation**

(EAs) → CCR

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

LDC.W &lt;EAs&gt;, CCR

**Operand Size**

Word

- I: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.
- H: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.
- N: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.
- Z: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.
- V: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.
- C: Loaded from the corresponding bit in the source operand.

**Description**

This instruction loads the source operand contents into the condition-code register (CCR). Although CCR is a byte register, the source operand is word size. The contents of the even address are loaded into CCR.

No interrupt requests, including NMI, are accepted immediately after execution of this instruction.

**Available Registers**

ERs: ER0 to ER7



**2.2.35 (1) MOV (B)****MOV (MOVE data)****Move****Operation**

Rs → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

MOV.B Rs, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Byte

**Description**

This instruction transfers one byte of data from an 8-bit register Rs to an 8-bit register Rd, tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	MOV.B	Rs, Rd	0 : C	rs : rd			2

**Notes**

## 2.2.35 (2) MOV (W)

## MOV (MOVe data)

Move

## Operation

Rs → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

## Assembly-Language Format

MOV.W Rs, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction transfers one word of data from a 16-bit register Rs to a 16-bit register Rd, tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	MOV.W	Rs, Rd	0 : D	rs : rd			2

## Notes



**2.2.35 (3) MOV (L)****MOV (MOVE data)****Move****Operation**

ERs → ERd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

MOV.L ERs, ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Longword

**Description**

This instruction transfers one longword of data from a 32-bit register ERs to a 32-bit register ERd, tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

ERs: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	MOV.L	ERs, ERd	0 : F	1 : ers ; 0 : erd			2

**Notes**

**2.2.35 (4) MOV (B)****MOV (MOVe data)****Move****Operation**

(EAs) → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

MOV.B &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction transfers the source operand contents to an 8-bit register Rs, tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERs: ER0 to ER7

## MOV (B)

## MOV (MOVE data)

Move

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format								No. of States		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte			
Immediate	MOV.B	#xx:8,Rd	F	rd									2
Register indirect	MOV.B	@ERs,Rd	6	0:ers	rd								4
Register indirect with displacement	MOV.B	@(d:16,ERs),Rd	6	E	0:ers	rd	disp						6
	MOV.B	@(d:24,ERs),Rd	7	8	0:ers	0	6	A	2	rd	0	0	10
Register indirect with post-increment	MOV.B	@ERs+,Rd	6	C	0:ers	rd							6
	MOV.B	@aa:8,Rd	2	rd	abs								4
Absolute address	MOV.B	@aa:16,Rd	6	A	0	rd	abs						6
	MOV.B	@aa:24,Rd	6	A	2	rd	0	0	0	abs			8

**Notes**

The MOV.B @ER7+, Rd instruction should never be used, because it leaves an odd value in the stack pointer (ER7). For details refer to section 3.3.2, Exception Processing, or to the hardware manual.

For the @aa:8 access range, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

**2.2.35 (5) MOV (W)****MOV (MOVE data)****Move****Operation**

(EAs) → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

MOV.W &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

**Operand Size**

Word

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction transfers the source operand contents to a 16-bit register Rd, tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

ERs: ER0 to ER7

## MOV (W)

## MOV (MOVE data)

Move

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format								No. of States	
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte		
Immediate	MOV.W	#xx:16.Rd	7	9 0	rd	IMM						4
Register indirect	MOV.W	@ERS.Rd	6	9 0:ers	rd							4
Register indirect with displacement	MOV.W	@(d:16,ERS).Rd	6	F 0:ers	rd	disp						6
Register indirect with post-increment	MOV.W	@(d:24,ERS).Rd	7	8 0:ers	0	6	B 2	rd 0	0	0	disp	10
Register indirect with absolute address	MOV.W	@ERS+.Rd	6	D 0:ers	rd							6
Absolute address	MOV.W	@aa:16.Rd	6	B 0	rd	abs						6
	MOV.W	@aa:24.Rd	6	B 2	rd	0	0	0	abs			8

## Notes

1. The source operand <EAs> must be located at an even address.
2. In machine language, MOV.W @R7+, Rd is identical to POP.W Rd.

## 2.2.35 (6) MOV (L)

MOV (MOVE data)

Move

## Operation

(EAs) → ERd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

## Assembly-Language Format

MOV.L &lt;EAs&gt;, ERd

## Operand Size

Longword

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

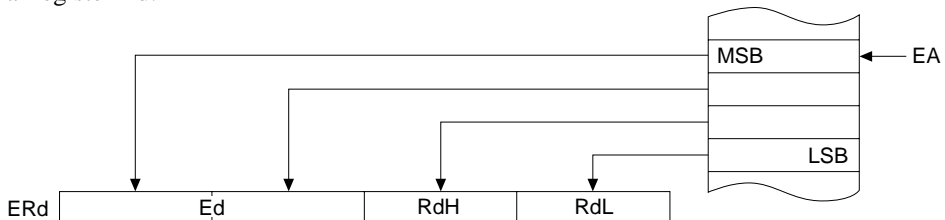
Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Description

This instruction transfers the source operand contents to a specified 32-bit register (ERd), tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result. The first memory word located at the effective address is stored in extended register Ed. The next word is stored in general register Rd.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

ERs: ER0 to ER7

## MOV (L)

## MOV (MOVE data)

Move

Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format										No. of States			
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte				
Immediate	MOV.L	#xx:32,Rd	7	A	0	0	0	IMM						6		
Register indirect	MOV.L	@ERs,ERd	0	1	0	0	6	9	0:ers;0:erd						8	
Register indirect with displacement	MOV.L	@(t:16,ERs),ERd	0	1	0	0	6	F	0:ers;0:erd		disp				10	
	MOV.L	@(t:24,ERs),ERd	0	1	0	0	7	8	0:ers	0	6	B	2	0:erd	0	0
Register indirect with post-increment	MOV.L	@ERs+,ERd	0	1	0	0	6	D	0:ers;0:erd							10
	MOV.L	@aa:16,ERd	0	1	0	0	6	B	0:0:erd		abs					10
Absolute address	MOV.L	@aa:24,ERd	0	1	0	0	6	B	2	0:erd	0	0	abs			12

## Notes

1. The source operand <EAs> must be located at an even address.
2. In machine language, MOV.L @ER7+, ERd is identical to POPL ERd.

**2.2.35 (7) MOV (B)****MOV (MOVe data)****Move****Operation**

Rs → (EAd)

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

---

**Assembly-Language Format**

MOV.B Rs, &lt;EAd&gt;

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

---

**Operand Size**

Byte

---

**Description**

This instruction transfers the contents of an 8-bit register Rs (source operand) to a destination location, tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

---

**Available Registers**

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

ERd: ER0 to ER7



## MOV (B)

## MOV (MOVE data)

Move

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format								No. of States			
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte				
Register indirect	MOV.B	Rs, @ERd	6	8	1	erd	rs							4
			6	E	1	erd	rs	disp						6
Register indirect with displacement	MOV.B	Rs, @(d;16,ERd)	7	8	0	erd	0	6	A	rs	0	0	disp	10
			6	C	1	erd	rs							6
Register indirect with pre-decrement	MOV.B	Rs, @-ERd	3	rs	abs									4
			6	A	8	rs	abs							6
Absolute address	MOV.B	Rs, @aa:24	6	A	A	rs	0	0	0	abs				8

## Notes

1. The MOV.B Rs, @-ER7 instruction should never be used, because it leaves an odd value in the stack pointer (ER7). For details refer to section 3.3.2, Exception Processing, or to the hardware manual.
2. Execution of MOV.B RnL, @-ERn or MOV.B RnH, @-ERn first decrements ERn by one, then transfers the designated part (RnL or RnH) of the resulting ERn value.

**2.2.35 (8) MOV (W)****MOV (MOVE data)****Move**

---

**Operation**

Rs → (EAd)

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

---

**Assembly-Language Format**

MOV.W Rs, &lt;EAd&gt;

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

---

**Operand Size**Word

---

**Description**

This instruction transfers the contents of a 16-bit register Rs (source operand) to a destination location, tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

---

**Available Registers**

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## MOV (W)

## MOV (MOVE data)

## Move

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format								No. of States		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte			
Register indirect with displacement	MOV/W	Rs,@ERd	6	9	1:erd: rs								4
	MOV/W	Rs,@(d:16,ERd)	6	F	1:erd: rs	disp							6
Register indirect with post-increment	MOV/W	Rs,@(d:24,ERd)	7	8	0:erd: 0	6	B	A	rs	0	0	disp	10
	MOV/W	Rs,@-ERd	6	D	1:erd: rs								6
Absolute address	MOV/W	Rs,@aa:16	6	B	8	rs	abs						6
	MOV/W	Rs,@aa:24	6	B	A	rs	0	0	abs				8

## Notes

1. The destination operand <EAd> must be located at an even address.
2. In machine language, MOV.W Rs, @-R7 is identical to PUSH.W Rs.
3. Execution of MOV.W Rn, @-ERn first decrements ERn by 2, then transfers the resulting value.

**2.2.35 (9) MOV (L)****MOV (MOVE data)****Move****Operation**

ERs → (EAd)

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑↓	↑↓	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

MOV.L ERs, &lt;EAd&gt;

**Operand Size**

Longword

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

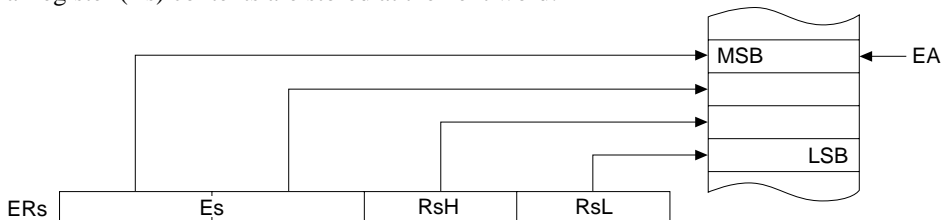
Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction transfers the contents of a 32-bit register ERs (source operand) to a destination location, tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result. The extended register (Es) contents are stored at the first word indicated by the effective address. The general register (Rs) contents are stored at the next word.

**Available Registers**

ERs: ER0 to ER7

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## MOV (L)

## MOV (MOVE data)

## Move

Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format										No. of States					
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte						
Register indirect	MOV.L	ERs, @ERd	0	1	0	0	6	9	1:erd;0:ers									8
			0	1	0	0	6	F	1:erd;0:ers	disp								
Register indirect with displacement	MOV.L	ERs, @(dt;16,ERd)	0	1	0	0	7	8	1:erd;0:ers	6	B	A	0:ers	0	0	disp		14
			0	1	0	0	6	D	1:erd;0:ers									
Register indirect with pre-decrement	MOV.L	ERs, @-ERd	0	1	0	0	6	B	8;0:ers									10
			0	1	0	0	6	B	A	0:ers	0	0						
Absolute address	MOV.L	ERs, @aa;16	0	1	0	0	6	B	8;0:ers									10
			0	1	0	0	6	B	A	0:ers	0	0			abs			

## Notes

1. The destination operand <EAd> must be located at an even address.
2. In machine language, MOV.L ERs, @-ER7 is identical to PUSH.L ERs.
3. Execution of MOV.L ERn, @-ERn first decrements ERn by 4, then transfers the resulting value.

**2.2.36 MOVFPE****MOVFPE (MOVE From Peripheral with E clock)****Move Data with E Clock****Operation**

(EAs) → Rd  
Synchronized with E clock

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑↓	↑↓	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

MOVFPE @aa:16, Rd

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction transfers memory contents specified by a 16-bit absolute address to a general register Rd in synchronization with an E clock, tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

Note: Avoid using this instruction in microcontrollers not having an E clock output pin, or in single-chip mode.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Absolute address	MOVFPE	@aa:16, Rd	6 ↓ A	4 ↓ rd	abs		*

**Notes**

1. This instruction cannot be used with addressing modes other than the above, and cannot transfer word data or longword data.
2. Data transfer by this instruction requires 9 to 16 states, so the execution time is variable. For details, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

## 2.2.37 MOVTPPE

## MOVTPPE (MOVE To Peripheral with E clock)

## Move Data with E Clock

## Operation

Rs → (EAd)  
Synchronized with E clock

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	0	—

## Assembly-Language Format

MOVTPPE Rs, @aa:16

H: Previous value remains unchanged.  
N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.  
Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.  
V: Always cleared to 0.  
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Byte

## Description

This instruction transfers the contents of a general register Rs (source operand) to a destination location specified by a 16-bit absolute address in synchronization with an E clock, tests the transferred data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

Note: Avoid using this instruction in microcontrollers not having an E clock output pin, or in single-chip mode.

## Available Registers

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Absolute address	MOVTPPE	Rs, @aa:16	6 ┆ A	C ┆ rs	abs		*

## Notes

1. This instruction cannot be used with addressing modes other than the above, and cannot transfer word data or longword data.
2. Data transfer by this instruction requires 9 to 16 states, so the execution time is variable. For details, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

**2.2.38 (1) MULXS (B)****MULXS (MULTIPLY eXtend as Signed)****Multiply Signed****Operation** $Rd \times Rs \rightarrow Rd$ **Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	—	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

MULXS.B Rs, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

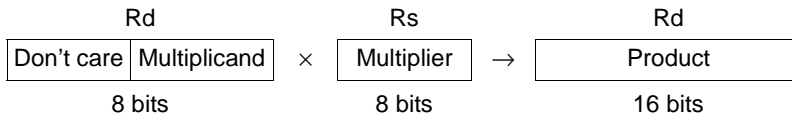
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Byte

**Description**

This instruction multiplies the lower 8 bits of a 16-bit register Rd (destination operand) by the contents of an 8-bit register Rs (source operand) as signed data and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd. If Rd is a general register, Rs can be the upper part (RdH) or lower part (RdL) of Rd. The operation performed is 8-bit  $\times$  8-bit  $\rightarrow$  16-bit signed multiplication.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	MULXS.B	Rs, Rd	0 : 1	C : 0	5 : 0	rs : rd	16

**Notes**



## 2.2.38 (2) MULXS (W)

## MULXS (MULTIply eXtend as Signed)

Multiply Signed

## Operation

 $ERd \times Rs \rightarrow ERd$ 

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

MULXS.W Rs, ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

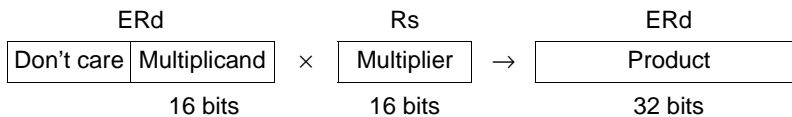
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction multiplies the lower 16 bits of a 32-bit register ERd (destination operand) by the contents of a 16-bit register Rs (source operand) as signed data and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd. Rs can be the upper part (Ed) or lower part (Rd) of ERd. The operation performed is 16-bit  $\times$  16-bit  $\rightarrow$  32-bit signed multiplication.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	MULXS.W	Rs, ERd	0 : 1	C : 0	5 : 2	rs : 0;erd	24

## Notes

**2.2.39 (1) MULXU (B)****MULXU (MULTIPLY eXtend as Unsigned)****Multiply****Operation** $Rd \times Rs \rightarrow Rd$ **Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

MULXU.B Rs, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

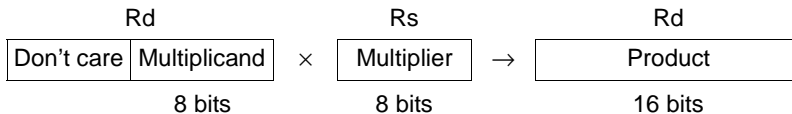
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Byte

**Description**

This instruction multiplies the lower 8 bits of a 16-bit register Rd (destination operand) by the contents of an 8-bit register Rs (source operand) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd. If Rd is a general register, Rs can be the upper part (RdH) or lower part (RdL) of Rd. The operation performed is 8-bit  $\times$  8-bit  $\rightarrow$  16-bit multiplication.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	MULXU.B	Rs, Rd	5 ⋮ 0	rs ⋮ rd			14

**Notes**

## 2.2.39 (2) MULXU (W)

**MULXU (MULTIply eXtend as Unsigned)****Multiply****Operation** $ERd \times Rs \rightarrow ERd$ **Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

MULXU.W Rs, ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

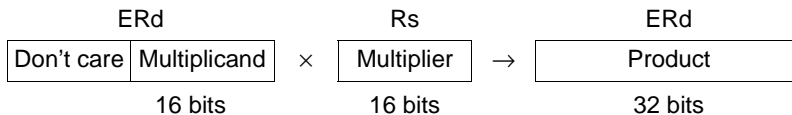
C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Word

**Description**

This instruction multiplies the lower 16 bits of a 32-bit register ERd (destination operand) by the contents of a 16-bit register Rs (source operand) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd. Rs can be the upper part (Ed) or lower part (Rd) of ERd. The operation performed is 16-bit  $\times$  16-bit  $\rightarrow$  32-bit multiplication.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	MULXU.W	Rs, ERd	5 : 2	rs : 0; erd			22

**Notes**

**2.2.40 (1) NEG (B)****NEG (NEGate)****Negate Binary Signed****Operation**

0 – Rd → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

NEG.B Rd

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 3; otherwise cleared to 0.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 7; otherwise cleared to 0.

**Description**

This instruction takes the two's complement of the contents of an 8-bit register Rd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd (subtracting the register contents from H'00). If the original contents of Rd was H'80, however, the result remains H'80.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	NEG.B	Rd	1 ∴ 7	8 ∴ rd			2

**Notes**

An overflow occurs if the previous contents of Rd was H'80.

**2.2.40 (2) NEG (W)****NEG (NEGate)****Negate Binary Signed****Operation**

0 – Rd → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

NEG.W Rd

- H: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 11; otherwise cleared to 0.
- N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.
- Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.
- V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.
- C: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 15; otherwise cleared to 0.

**Operand Size**

Word

**Description**

This instruction takes the two's complement of the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd (subtracting the register contents from H'0000). If the original contents of Rd was H'8000, however, the result remains H'8000.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	NEG.W	Rd	1 ; 7	9 ; rd			2

**Notes**

An overflow occurs if the previous contents of Rd was H'8000.

**2.2.40 (3) NEG (L)****NEG (NEGate)****Negate Binary Signed****Operation**

0 – ERd → ERd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

NEG.L ERd

**Operand Size**

Longword

H: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 27; otherwise cleared to 0.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 31; otherwise cleared to 0.

**Description**

This instruction takes the two's complement of the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd (subtracting the register contents from H'00000000). If the original contents of ERd was H'80000000, however, the result remains H'80000000.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	NEG.L	ERd	1 : 7	B : 0;erd			2

**Notes**

An overflow occurs if the previous contents of ERd was H'80000000.

## 2.2.41 NOP

## NOP (No Operation)

No Operation

## Operation

PC + 2 → PC

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

NOP

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

—

## Description

This instruction only increments the program counter, causing the next instruction to be executed. The internal state of the CPU does not change.

## Available Registers

—

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
—	NOP		0   0	0   0			2

## Notes

**2.2.42 (1) NOT (B)****NOT (NOT = logical complement)****Logical Complement****Operation** $\neg Rd \rightarrow Rd$ **Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

NOT.B Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size****Byte****Description**

This instruction takes the one's complement of the contents of an 8-bit register Rd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	NOT.B	Rd	1 ⋮ 7	0 ⋮ rd			2

**Notes**



## 2.2.42 (2) NOT (W)

NOT (NOT = logical complement)

Logical Complement

**Operation** $\neg$  Rd  $\rightarrow$  Rd**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

NOT.W Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero (the previous Rd value was H'FFFF); otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Word

**Description**

This instruction takes the one's complement of the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	NOT.W	Rd	1 ⋮ 7	1 ⋮ rd			2

**Notes**

**2.2.42 (3) NOT (L)****NOT (NOT = logical complement)****Logical Complement****Operation** $\neg ERd \rightarrow ERd$ **Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

NOT.L ERd

**Operand Size**

Longword

I: Previous value remains unchanged.

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction takes the one's complement of the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	NOT.L	ERd	1 : 7	3 : 0;erd			2

**Notes**

**2.2.43 (1) OR (B)****OR (inclusive OR logical)****Logical OR****Operation**

Rd ∨ (EAs) → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

OR.B &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Byte

**Description**

This instruction ORs the source operand with the contents of an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	OR.B	#xx:8, Rd	C : rd	IMM			2
Register direct	OR.B	Rs, Rd	1 : 4	rs : rd			2

**Notes**

**2.2.43 (2) OR (W)****OR (inclusive OR logical)****Logical OR****Operation**

Rd ∨ (EAs) → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

OR.W &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

**Operand Size**

Word

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction ORs the source operand with the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	OR.W	#xx:16, Rd	7 : 9	4 : rd	IMM		4
Register direct	OR.W	Rs, Rd	6 : 4	rs : rd			2

**Notes**

## 2.2.43 (3) OR (L)

OR (inclusive OR logical)

Logical OR

## Operation

ERd  $\vee$  (EAs)  $\rightarrow$  ERd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	0	—

## Assembly-Language Format

OR.L &lt;EAs&gt;, ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

Longword

## Description

This instruction ORs the source operand with the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd.

## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

ERs: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format						No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	
Immediate	OR.L	#xx:32,ERd	7   A	4   0   erd	IMM				6
Register direct	OR.L	ERs, ERd	0   1	F   0	6   4	0   ers   0   erd			4

## Notes

## 2.2.44 ORC

ORC (inclusive OR Control register)

Logical OR with CCR

**Operation**CCR  $\vee$  #IMM  $\rightarrow$  CCR**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

ORC #xx:8, CCR

**Operand Size**

Byte

I: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

UI: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

H: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

U: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

N: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

Z: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

V: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

C: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

**Description**

This instruction ORs the contents of the condition-code register (CCR) with immediate data and stores the result in the condition-code register. No interrupt requests, including NMI, are accepted immediately after execution of this instruction.

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	ORC	#xx:8, CCR	0 : 4	IMM			2

**Notes**

**2.2.45 (1) POP (W)****POP (POP data)****Pop Data from Stack****Operation**

@SP+ → Rn

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

POP.W Rn

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Word

**Description**

This instruction restores data from the stack to a 16-bit general register Rn, tests the restored data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

**Available Registers**

Rn: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
—	POP.W	Rn	6 : D	7 : rn			6

**Notes**

POP.W Rn is identical to MOV.W @SP+, Rn.

**2.2.45 (2) POP (L)****POP (POP data)****Pop Data from Stack****Operation**

@SP+ → ERn

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

POP.L ERn

**Operand Size**

Longword

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Description**

This instruction restores data from the stack to a 32-bit general register ERn, tests the restored data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

**Available Registers**

ERn: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
—	POP.L	ERn	0 : 1	0 : 0	6 : D	7 : 0:ern	10

**Notes**

POP.L ERn is identical to MOV.L @SP+, ERn.



**2.2.46 (1) PUSH (W)****PUSH (PUSH data)****Push Data on Stack****Operation**

Rn → @-SP

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

PUSH.W Rn

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Word

**Description**

This instruction saves data from a 16-bit register Rn onto the stack, tests the saved data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

**Available Registers**

Rn: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
—	PUSH.W	Rn	6 : D	F : rn			6

**Notes**

1. PUSH.W Rn is identical to MOV.W Rn, @-SP.
2. When PUSH.W R7 or PUSH.W E7 is executed, the value saved on the stack is the lower part (R7) or upper part (E7) of the value of ER7 before execution minus two.

**2.2.46 (2) PUSH (L)****PUSH (PUSH data)****Push Data on Stack****Operation**

ERn → @-SP

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

PUSH.L ERn

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the data value is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the data value is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Longword

**Description**

This instruction pushes data from a 32-bit register ERn onto the stack, tests the saved data, and sets condition-code flags according to the result.

**Available Registers**

ERn: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
—	PUSH.L	ERn	0 : 1	0 : 0	6 : D	F : 0 : ern	10

**Notes**

1. PUSH.L ERn is identical to MOV.L ERn, @-SP.
2. When PUSH.L ER7 is executed, the value saved on the stack is the value of ER7 before execution minus four.

## 2.2.47 (1) ROTL (B)

## ROTL (ROTate Left)

Rotate

## Operation

Rd (left rotation) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↑	0	↑

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTL.B Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

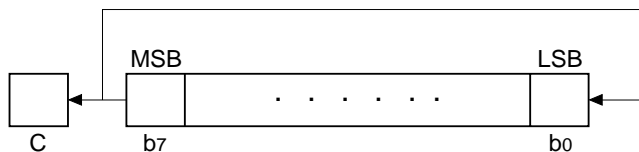
C: Receives the previous value in bit 7.

## Operand Size

Byte

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) one bit to the left. The most significant bit is rotated to the least significant bit (bit 0), and also copied to the carry flag.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTL.B	Rd	1 : 2	8 : rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.47 (2) ROTL (W)

## ROTL (ROTate Left)

Rotate

## Operation

Rd (left rotation) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTL.W Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

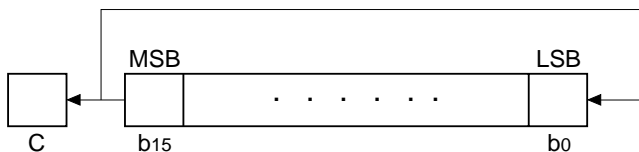
C: Receives the previous value in bit 15.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) one bit to the left. The most significant bit is rotated to the least significant bit (bit 0), and also copied to the carry flag.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTL.W	Rd	1 : 2	9 : rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.47 (3) ROTL (L)

## ROTL (ROTate Left)

Rotate

## Operation

ERd (left rotation) → ERd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTL.L ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

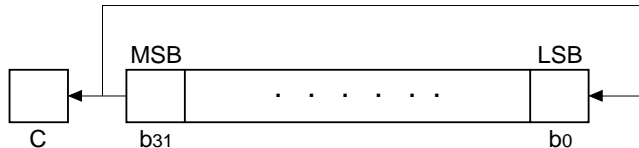
C: Receives the previous value in bit 31.

## Operand Size

Longword

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) one bit to the left. The most significant bit is rotated to the least significant bit (bit 0), and also copied to the carry flag.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTL.L	ERd	1	2	B 0;erd		2

## Notes

## 2.2.48 (1) ROTR (B)

## ROTR (ROTate Right)

Rotate

## Operation

Rd (right rotation) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑↓	↑↓	0	↑↓

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTR.B Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

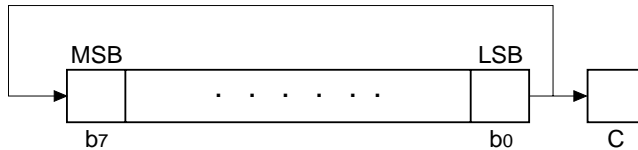
C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Operand Size

Byte

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) one bit to the right. The least significant bit is rotated to the most significant bit (bit 7), and also copied to the carry flag.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTR.B	Rd	1 ∴ 3	8 ∴ rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.48 (2) ROTR (W)

## ROTR (ROTate Right)

Rotate

## Operation

Rd (right rotation) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↑	0	↑

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTR.W Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

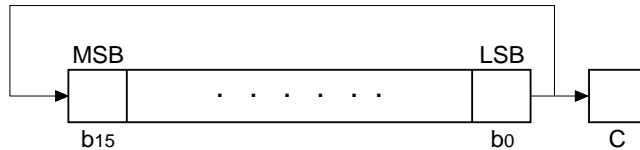
C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) one bit to the right. The least significant bit is rotated to the most significant bit (bit 15), and also copied to the carry flag.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTR.W	Rd	1   3	9   rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.48 (3) ROTR (L)

## ROTR (ROTate Right)

Rotate

## Operation

ERd (right rotation) → ERd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↑	0	↑

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTR.L ERd

## Operand Size

Longword

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

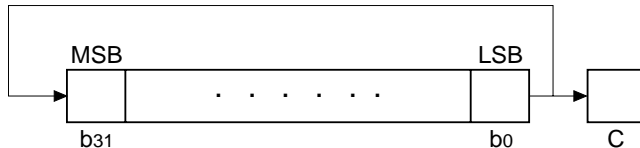
Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) one bit to the right. The least significant bit is rotated to the most significant bit (bit 31), and also copied to the carry flag.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTR.L	ERd	1 ⋮ 3	B ⋮ 0;erd			2

## Notes



## 2.2.49 (1) ROTXL (B)

## ROTXL (ROtate with eXtend carry Left)

## Rotate through Carry

## Operation

Rd (left rotation through carry bit) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTXL.B Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

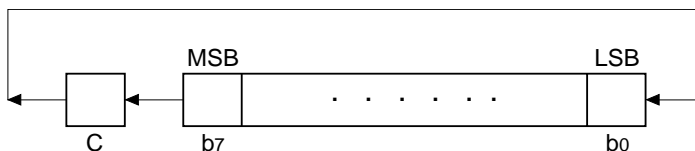
C: Receives the previous value in bit 7.

## Operand Size

Byte

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) one bit to the left through the carry flag. The carry flag is rotated into the least significant bit (bit 0). The most significant bit rotates into the carry flag.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTXL.B	Rd	1 : 2	0 : rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.49 (2) ROTXL (W)

## ROTXL (ROTate with eXtend carry Left)

## Rotate through Carry

## Operation

Rd (left rotation through carry bit) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTXL.W Rd

## Operand Size

Word

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

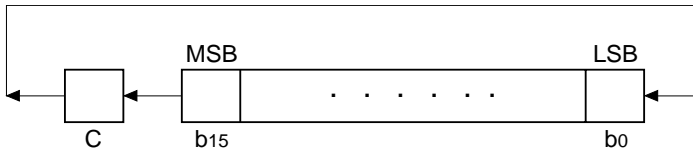
Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Receives the previous value in bit 15.

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) one bit to the left through the carry flag. The carry flag is rotated into the least significant bit (bit 0). The most significant bit rotates into the carry flag.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTXL.W	Rd	1 ⋮ 2	1 ⋮ rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.49 (3) ROTXL (L)

## ROTXL (ROTate with eXtend carry Left)

## Rotate through Carry

## Operation

ERd (left rotation through carry bit) → ERd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTXL.L ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

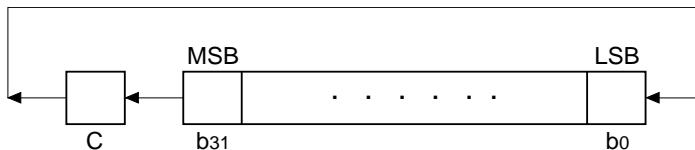
C: Receives the previous value in bit 31.

## Operand Size

Longword

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) one bit to the left through the carry flag. The carry flag is rotated into the least significant bit (bit 0). The most significant bit rotates into the carry flag.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTXL.L	ERd	1	2	3	0:erd	2

## Notes

**2.2.50 (1) ROTXR (B)****ROTXR (ROTate with eXtend carry Right)****Rotate through Carry****Operation**

Rd (right rotation through carry bit) → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	↕

**Assembly-Language Format**

ROTXR.B Rd

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

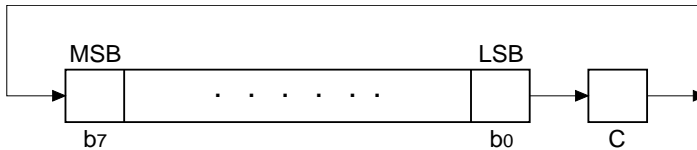
Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

**Description**

This instruction rotates the bits in an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) one bit to the right through the carry flag. The carry flag is rotated into the most significant bit (bit 7). The least significant bit rotates into the carry flag.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTXR.B	Rd	1 : 3	0 : rd			2

**Notes**

## 2.2.50 (2) ROTXR (W)

## ROTXR (ROTate with eXtend carry Right)

## Rotate through Carry

## Operation

Rd (right rotation through carry bit) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTXR.W Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

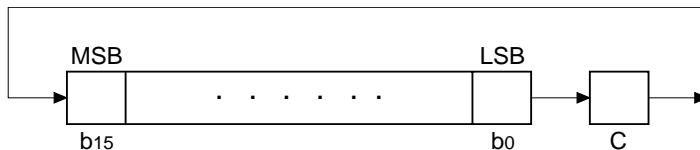
C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) one bit to the right through the carry flag. The carry flag is rotated into the most significant bit (bit 15). The least significant bit rotates into the carry flag.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTXR.W	Rd	1 : 3	1 : rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.50 (3) ROTXR (L)

## ROTXR (ROtate with eXtend carry Right)

## Rotate through Carry

## Operation

ERd (right rotation through carry bit) → ERd

## Assembly-Language Format

ROTXR.L ERd

## Operand Size

Longword

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	↕

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

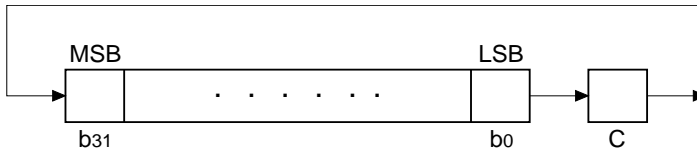
Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Description

This instruction rotates the bits in a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) one bit to the right through the carry flag. The carry flag is rotated into the most significant bit (bit 31). The least significant bit rotates into the carry flag.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	ROTXR.L	ERd	1 3	3 0:erd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.51 RTE

**RTE (ReTurn from Exception)****Return from Exception Handling****Operation**

@SP+ → CCR

@SP+ → PC

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

RTE

**Operand Size**

—

I: Restored from the corresponding bit on the stack.

UI: Restored from the corresponding bit on the stack.

H: Restored from the corresponding bit on the stack.

U: Restored from the corresponding bit on the stack.

N: Restored from the corresponding bit on the stack.

Z: Restored from the corresponding bit on the stack.

V: Restored from the corresponding bit on the stack.

C: Restored from the corresponding bit on the stack.

**Description**

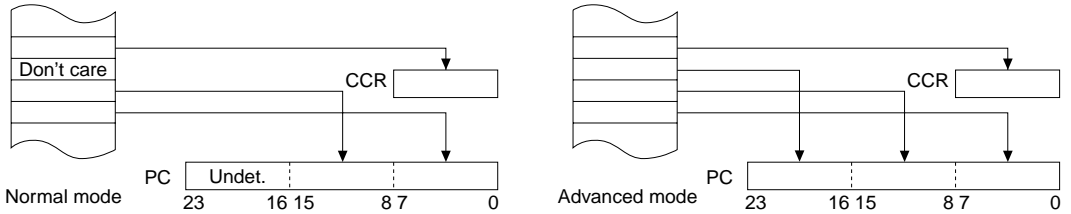
This instruction returns from an exception-handling routine by restoring the condition-code register (CCR) and program counter (PC) from the stack. Program execution continues from the address restored to the program counter. The CCR and PC contents at the time of execution of this instruction are lost.

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
—	RTE		5 ∴ 6	7 ∴ 0			10

**RTE****RTE (ReTurn from Exception)****Return from Exception Handling****Notes**

The stack structure differs between normal mode and advanced mode.





## 2.2.52 RTS

## RTS (ReTurn from Subroutine)

## Return from Subroutine

## Operation

@SP+ → PC

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

RTS

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

—

## Description

This instruction returns from a subroutine by restoring the program counter (PC) from the stack. Program execution continues from the address restored to the program counter. The PC contents at the time of execution of this instruction are lost.

## Available Registers

—

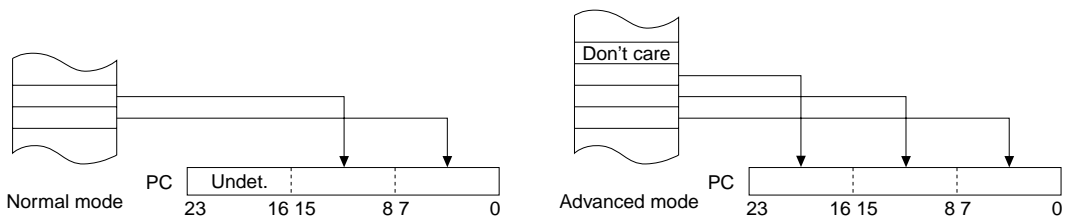
## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States	
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	Normal	Advanced
—	RTS		5 : 4	7 : 0			8	10

## Notes

The stack structure and number of states required for execution differ between normal mode and advanced mode.

In normal mode, only the lower 16 bits of the program counter are restored.



## 2.2.53 (1) SHAL (B)

## SHAL (SHift Arithmetic Left)

Shift Arithmetic

## Operation

Rd (left arithmetic shift) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	↕	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

SHAL.B Rd

## Operand Size

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

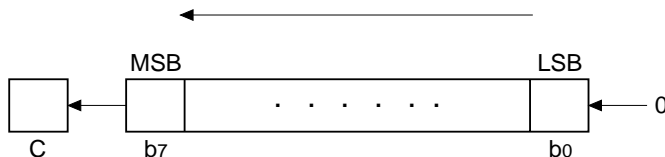
Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Receives the previous value in bit 7.

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in an 8-bit register Rd (destination operand) one bit to the left. The most significant bit shifts into the carry flag. The least significant bit (bit 0) is cleared to 0.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHAL.B	Rd	1 ∴ 0	8 ∴ rd			2

## Notes

The SHAL instruction differs from the SHLL instruction in its effect on the overflow flag.

## 2.2.53 (2) SHAL (W)

## SHAL (SHift Arithmetic Left)

## Shift Arithmetic

## Operation

Rd (left arithmetic shift) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	↕	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

SHAL.W Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

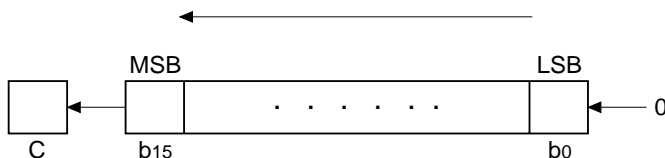
C: Receives the previous value in bit 15.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in a 16-bit register Rd (destination operand) one bit to the left. The most significant bit shifts into the carry flag. The least significant bit (bit 0) is cleared to 0.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHAL.W	Rd	1   0	9   rd			2

## Notes

The SHAL instruction differs from the SHLL instruction in its effect on the overflow flag.

## 2.2.53 (3) SHAL (L)

## SHAL (SHift Arithmetic Left)

Shift Arithmetic

## Operation

ERd (left arithmetic shift) → ERd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	↕	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

SHAL.L ERd

## Operand Size

Longword

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

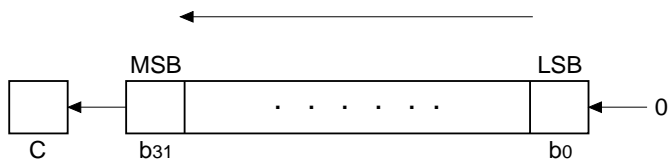
Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Receives the previous value in bit 31.

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in a 32-bit register ERd (destination operand) one bit to the left. The most significant bit shifts into the carry flag. The least significant bit (bit 0) is cleared to 0.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHAL.L	ERd	1 0	B 0;erd			2

## Notes

The SHAL instruction differs from the SHLL instruction in its effect on the overflow flag.

## 2.2.54 (1) SHAR (B)

## SHAR (SHift Arithmetic Right)

## Shift Arithmetic

## Operation

Rd (right arithmetic shift) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	↕

## Assembly-Language Format

SHAR.B Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

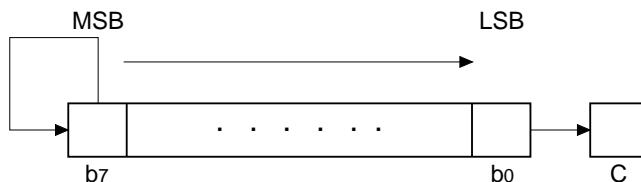
C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Operand Size

Byte

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in an 8-bit register Rd (destination operand) one bit to the right. Bit 0 shifts into the carry flag. Bit 7 shifts into itself. Since bit 7 remains unaltered, the sign does not change.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHAR.B	Rd	1 ; 1	8 ; rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.54 (2) SHAR (W)

## SHAR (SHift Arithmetic Right)

## Shift Arithmetic

## Operation

Rd (right arithmetic shift) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↕	↕	0	—

## Assembly-Language Format

SHAR.W Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

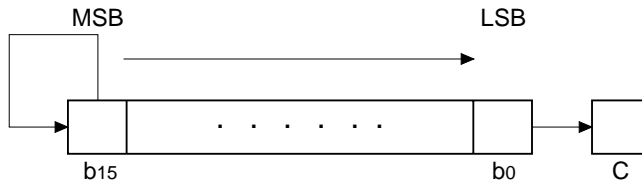
C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in a 16-bit register Rd (destination operand) one bit to the right. Bit 0 shifts into the carry flag. Bit 15 shifts into itself. Since bit 15 remains unaltered, the sign does not change.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHAR.W	Rd	1 ∴ 1	9 ∴ rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.54 (3) SHAR (L)

## SHAR (SHift Arithmetic Right)

## Shift Arithmetic

## Operation

ERd (right arithmetic shift) → ERd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	0	↓

## Assembly-Language Format

SHAR.L ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

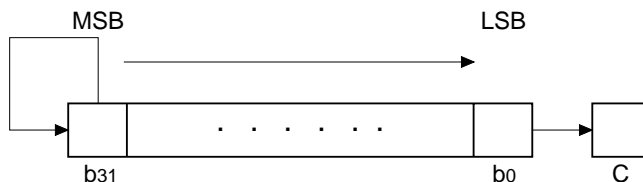
C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Operand Size

Longword

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in a 32-bit register ERd (destination operand) one bit to the right. Bit 0 shifts into the carry flag. Bit 31 shifts into itself. Since bit 31 remains unaltered, the sign does not change.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHAR.L	ERd	1	1	B ; 0;erd		2

## Notes

## 2.2.55 (1) SHLL (B)

## SHLL (SHift Logical Left)

Shift Logical

## Operation

Rd (left logical shift) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑↓	↑↓	0	—

## Assembly-Language Format

SHLL.B Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

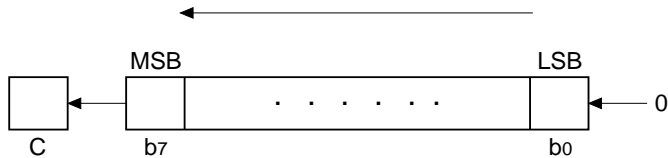
C: Receives the previous value in bit 7.

## Operand Size

Byte

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in an 8-bit register Rd (destination operand) one bit to the left. The most significant bit shifts into the carry flag. The least significant bit (bit 0) is cleared to 0.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHLL.B	Rd	1 ↓ 0	0 ↓ rd			2

## Notes

The SHLL instruction differs from the SHAL instruction in its effect on the overflow flag.



## 2.2.55 (2) SHLL (W)

## SHLL (SHift Logical Left)

Shift Logical

## Operation

Rd (left logical shift) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↑	0	↑

## Assembly-Language Format

SHLL.W Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

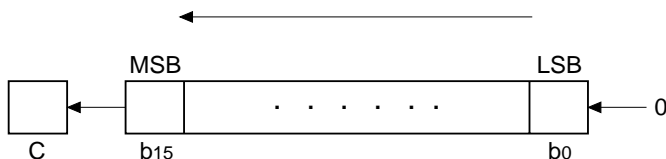
C: Receives the previous value in bit 15.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in a 16-bit register Rd (destination operand) one bit to the left. The most significant bit shifts into the carry flag. The least significant bit (bit 0) is cleared to 0.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHLL.W	Rd	1 ∴ 0	1 ∴ rd			2

## Notes

The SHLL instruction differs from the SHAL instruction in its effect on the overflow flag.

## 2.2.55 (3) SHLL (L)

## SHLL (SHift Logical Left)

Shift Logical

## Operation

ERd (left logical shift) → ERd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑↓	↑↓	0	↑↓

## Assembly-Language Format

SHLL.L ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

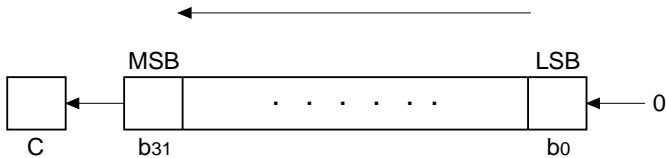
C: Receives the previous value in bit 31.

## Operand Size

Longword

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in a 32-bit register ERd (destination operand) one bit to the left. The most significant bit shifts into the carry flag. The least significant bit (bit 0) is cleared to 0.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHLL.L	ERd	1 0	3 0;erd			2

## Notes

The SHLL instruction differs from the SHAL instruction in its effect on the overflow flag.

## 2.2.56 (1) SHLR (B)

## SHLR (SHift Logical Right)

Shift Logical

## Operation

Rd (right logical shift) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	0	↑↓	0	↑↓

## Assembly-Language Format

SHLR.B Rd

## Operand Size

Byte

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

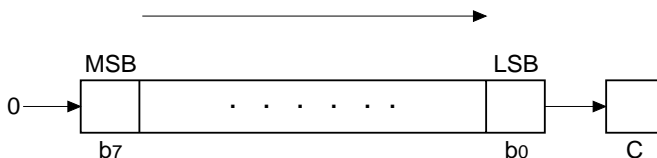
Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in an 8-bit register Rd (destination operand) one bit to the right. The least significant bit shifts into the carry flag. The most significant bit (bit 7) is cleared to 0.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHLR.B	Rd	1 ∴ 1	0 ∴ rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.56 (2) SHLR (W)

## SHLR (SHift Logical Right)

Shift Logical

## Operation

Rd (right logical shift) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	0	↑	0	↓

## Assembly-Language Format

SHLR.W Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Always cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

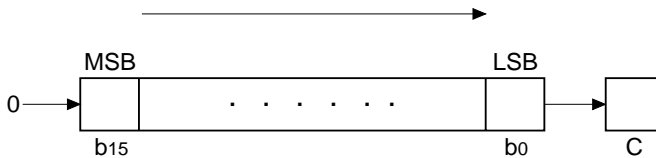
C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Operand Size

Word

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in a 16-bit register Rd (destination operand) one bit to the right. The least significant bit shifts into the carry flag. The most significant bit (bit 15) is cleared to 0.



## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHLR.W	Rd	1 ⋮ 1	1 ⋮ rd			2

## Notes

## 2.2.56 (3) SHLR (L)

## SHLR (SHift Logical Right)

Shift Logical

## Operation

ERd (right logical shift) → ERd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	0	↑	0	↑

## Assembly-Language Format

SHLR.L ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Always cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

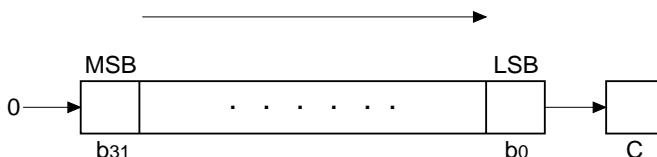
C: Receives the previous value in bit 0.

## Operand Size

Longword

## Description

This instruction shifts the bits in a 32-bit register ERd (destination operand) one bit to the right. The least significant bit shifts into the carry flag. The most significant bit (bit 31) is cleared to 0.



## Available Registers

ERd: ER0 to ER7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SHLR.L	ERd	1	1	3	0;erd	2

## Notes

## 2.2.57 SLEEP

## SLEEP (SLEEP)

## Power-Down Mode

## Operation

Program execution state → power-down mode

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

## Assembly-Language Format

SLEEP

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Operand Size

—

## Description

When the SLEEP instruction is executed, the CPU enters a power-down state. Its internal state remains unchanged, but the CPU stops executing instructions and waits for an exception-handling request. When it receives an exception-handling request, the CPU exits the power-down state and begins the exception-handling sequence. Interrupt requests other than NMI cannot end the power-down state if they are masked in the CPU.

## Available Registers

—

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
—	SLEEP		0 : 1	8 : 0			2

## Notes

For information about the power-down state, see the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

**2.2.58 (1) STC (B)****STC (STore from Control register)****Store CCR****Operation**

CCR → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

STC.B CCR, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Byte

**Description**

This instruction copies the CCR contents to an 8-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	STC.B	CCR, Rd	0 : 2	0 : rd			2

**Notes**

**2.2.58 (2) STC (W)****STC (STore from Control register)****Store CCR**

---

**Operation**

CCR → (EAd)

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

---

**Assembly-Language Format**

STC.W CCR, &lt;EAd&gt;

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

---

**Operand Size**Word

---

**Description**

This instruction copies the CCR contents to a destination location. Although CCR is a byte register, the destination operand is a word operand. The CCR contents are stored at the even address.

---

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7



## STC (W)

## STC (Store from Control register)

## Store CCR

Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format										No. of States										
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte											
Register indirect	STC.W	CCR, @ERd	0	1	4	0	6	9	1:erd	0													6
			0	1	4	0	6	F	1:erd	0	disp												
Register indirect with displacement	STC.W	CCR, @(d:16,ERd)	0	1	4	0	7	8	0:erd	0	6	A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	12
			0	1	4	0	6	D	1:erd	0													
Register indirect with pre-decrement	STC.W	CCR, @-ERd	0	1	4	0	6	B	8	0	abs												8
			0	1	4	0	6	B	8	0	abs												
Absolute address	STC.W	CCR, @aa:16	0	1	4	0	6	B	A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	10
			0	1	4	0	6	B	A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## Notes

**2.2.59 (1) SUB (B)****SUB (SUBtract binary)****Subtract Binary****Operation**

Rd – Rs → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

SUB.B Rs, Rd

**Operand Size**

Byte

H: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 3; otherwise cleared to 0.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 7; otherwise cleared to 0.

**Description**

This instruction subtracts the contents of an 8-bit register Rs (source operand) from the contents of an 8-bit register Rd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SUB.B	Rs, Rd	1 ∴ 8	rs ∴ rd			2

---

**SUB (B)****SUB (SUBtract binary)****Subtract Binary**

---

**Notes**

The SUB.B instruction can operate only on general registers. Immediate data can be subtracted from general register contents by using the SUBX instruction. Before executing SUBX #xx:8, Rd, first set the Z flag to 1 and clear the C flag to 0. The following coding examples can also be used to subtract nonzero immediate data #IMM.

- (1) ORC #H'05, CCR  
SUBX #(IMM-1), Rd
- (2) ADD #(0-IMM), Rd  
XORC #H'01, CCR

## 2.2.59 (2) SUB (W)

## SUB (SUBtract binary)

## Subtract Binary

## Operation

Rd – (EAs) → Rd

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

## Assembly-Language Format

SUB.W &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

## Operand Size

Word

H: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 11; otherwise cleared to 0.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 15; otherwise cleared to 0.

## Description

This instruction subtracts a source operand from the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd.

## Available Registers

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	SUB.W	#xx:16, Rd	7 : 9	3 : rd	IMM		4
Register direct	SUB.W	Rs, Rd	1 : 9	rs : rd			2

## Notes

**2.2.59 (3) SUB (L)****SUB (SUBtract binary)****Subtract Binary****Operation**

ERd – &lt;EAs&gt; → ERd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

SUB.L &lt;EAs&gt;, ERd

H: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 27;  
otherwise cleared to 0.N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise  
cleared to 0.Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise  
cleared to 0.V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise  
cleared to 0.C: Set to 1 if there is a borrow at bit 31;  
otherwise cleared to 0.**Operand Size**

Longword

**Description**

This instruction subtracts a source operand from the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

ERs: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format						No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	
Immediate	SUB.L	#xx:32, ERd	7 : A	3 : 0;erd	IMM				6
Register direct	SUB.L	ERs, ERd	1 : A	1;ers;0;erd					2

**Notes**

**2.2.60 SUBS****SUBS (SUBtract with Sign extension)****Subtract Binary Address Data****Operation**

ERd - 1 → ERd

ERd - 2 → ERd

ERd - 4 → ERd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

SUBS #1, ERd

SUBS #2, ERd

SUBS #4, ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Longword

**Description**

This instruction subtracts the immediate value 1, 2, or 4 from the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination register). Differing from the SUB instruction, it does not affect the condition-code flags.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	SUBS	#1, ERd	1	B	0	0:erd	2
Register direct	SUBS	#2, ERd	1	B	8	0:erd	2
Register direct	SUBS	#4, ERd	1	B	9	0:erd	2

**Notes**

## 2.2.61 SUBX

SUBX (SUBtract with eXtend carry)

Subtract with Borrow

**Operation**

Rd – (EAs) – C → Rd

**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	↑	—	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

SUBX &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

H: Set to 1 if there is a borrow from bit 3; otherwise cleared to 0.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Set to 1 if an overflow occurs; otherwise cleared to 0.

C: Set to 1 if there is a borrow from bit 7; otherwise cleared to 0.

**Operand Size**

Byte

**Description**

This instruction subtracts the source operand and carry flag from the contents of an 8-bit register Rd (destination operand) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	SUBX	#xx:8, Rd	B : rd	IMM			2
Register direct	SUBX	Rs, Rd	1 : E	rs : rd			2

**Notes**

## 2.2.62 TRAPA

## TRAPA (TRAP Always)

## Trap Unconditionally

## Operation

PC → @-SP

CCR → @-SP

&lt;Vector&gt; → PC

## Assembly-Language Format

TRAPA #x:2

## Operand Size

—

## Condition Code

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
1	$\Delta^{*1}$	—	—	—	—	—	—

I: Always set to 1.

U: See notes.

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Previous value remains unchanged.

Z: Previous value remains unchanged.

V: Previous value remains unchanged.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

## Description

This instruction pushes the program counter (PC) and condition-code register (CCR) on the stack, then sets the I bit to 1 and branches to a new address. The new address is the contents of the vector address corresponding to the specified vector number. The PC value pushed on the stack is the starting address of the next instruction after the TRAPA instruction.

#x	Vector Address	
	Normal Mode	Advanced Mode
0	H'0010 to H'0011	H'000020 to H'000023
1	H'0012 to H'0013	H'000024 to H'000027
2	H'0014 to H'0015	H'000028 to H'00002B
3	H'0016 to H'0017	H'00002C to H'00002F

## Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Register direct	TRAPA	#x:2	5 : 7	00 : IMM : 0			14

## Notes

- CCR bit 6 is set to 1 when used as an interrupt mask bit, but retains its previous value when used as a user bit.
- The stack and vector structure differ between normal mode and advanced mode.



**2.2.63 (1) XOR (B)****XOR (eXclusive OR logical)****Exclusive Logical OR****Operation**Rd  $\oplus$  (EAs)  $\rightarrow$  Rd**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

XOR.B &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Byte

**Description**

This instruction exclusively ORs the source operand with the contents of an 8-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 8-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

Rs: R0L to R7L, R0H to R7H

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	XOR.B	#xx:8, Rd	D ⋮ rd	IMM			2
Register direct	XOR.B	Rs, Rd	1 ⋮ 5	rs ⋮ rd			2

**Notes**

**2.2.63 (2) XOR (W)****XOR (eXclusive OR logical)****Exclusive Logical OR****Operation**Rd  $\oplus$  (EAs)  $\rightarrow$  Rd**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↑	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

XOR.W &lt;EAs&gt;, Rd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Word

**Description**

This instruction exclusively ORs the source operand with the contents of a 16-bit register Rd (destination register) and stores the result in the 16-bit register Rd.

**Available Registers**

Rd: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

Rs: R0 to R7, E0 to E7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	XOR.W	#xx:16, Rd	7 : 9	5 : rd	IMM		4
Register direct	XOR.W	Rs, Rd	6 : 5	rs : rd			2

**Notes**

**2.2.63 (3) XOR (L)****XOR (eXclusive OR logical)****Exclusive Logical OR****Operation**ERd  $\oplus$  (EAs)  $\rightarrow$  ERd**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
—	—	—	—	↑	↓	0	—

**Assembly-Language Format**

XOR.L &lt;EAs&gt;, ERd

H: Previous value remains unchanged.

N: Set to 1 if the result is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

Z: Set to 1 if the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.

V: Always cleared to 0.

C: Previous value remains unchanged.

**Operand Size**

Longword

**Description**

This instruction exclusively ORs the source operand with the contents of a 32-bit register ERd (destination register) and stores the result in the 32-bit register ERd.

**Available Registers**

ERd: ER0 to ER7

ERs: ER0 to ER7

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format						No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	
Immediate	XOR.L	#xx:32, ERd	7   A	5   0   erd	IMM				6
Register direct	XOR.L	ERs, ERd	0   1	F   0	6   5	0   ers   0   erd			4

**Notes**

## 2.2.64 XORC

XORC (eXclusive OR Control register)

Exclusive Logical OR with CCR

**Operation**CCR  $\oplus$  #IMM  $\rightarrow$  CCR**Condition Code**

I	UI	H	U	N	Z	V	C
↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑

**Assembly-Language Format**

XORC #xx:8, CCR

**Operand Size**

Byte

I: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

UI: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

H: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

U: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

N: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

Z: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

V: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

C: Stores the corresponding bit of the result.

**Description**

This instruction exclusively ORs the contents of the condition-code register (CCR) with immediate data and stores the result in the condition-code register. No interrupt requests, including NMI, are accepted immediately after execution of this instruction.

**Operand Format and Number of States Required for Execution**

Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Operands	Instruction Format				No. of States
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	
Immediate	XORC	#xx:8, CCR	0 : 5	IMM			2

**Notes**

## 2.3 Instruction Set Summary

**Table 2.1 Instruction Set Summary**

Function	Instruction	Addressing Modes												
		#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d:16,ERn)	@(d:24,ERn)	@ERn+/@-ERn	@aa:8	@aa:16	@aa:24	@(d:8,PC)	@(d:16,PC)	@@aa:8	
Data transfer	MOV	BWL	BWL	BWL	BWL	BWL	BWL	B	BWL	BWL	—	—	—	—
	POP, PUSH	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WL
	MOVFP, MOVTPE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	B	—	—	—	—	—
Arithmetic operations	ADD, CMP	BWL	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	SUB	WL	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	ADDX, SUBX	B	B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	ADDS, SUBS	—	L	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	INC, DEC	—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	DAA, DAS	—	B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	MULXU, DIVXU, MULXS, DIVXS	—	BW	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	NEG	—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	EXTU, EXTS	—	WL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Logic operations	AND, OR, XOR	BWL	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	NOT	—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Shift operations	—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
Bit manipulation	—	B	B	—	—	—	—	B	—	—	—	—	—	

Function	Instruction	Addressing Modes												
		#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d:16,ERn)	@(d:24,ERn)	@ERn+/@-ERn	@aa:8	@aa:16	@aa:24	@(d:8,PC)	@(d:16,PC)	@@aa:8	—
Branch	Bcc, BSR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	—
	JMP, JSR	—	—	○	—	—	—	—	—	○	—	—	○	—
	RTS	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○
System control	TRAPA, RTE, SLEEP	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○
	LDC	B	B	W	W	W	W	—	W	W	—	—	—	—
	STC	—	B	W	W	W	W	—	W	W	—	—	—	—
	ANDC, ORC, XORC	B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	NOP	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○
Block data transfer	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	B

Legend:

B: Byte

W: Word

L: Longword

Table 2.2 Instruction Set

## (1) Data Transfer Instructions

Mnemonic		Size	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)								Operation	Condition Code					No. of States	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d,ERn)	@ERn+@-ERn	@aa	@(d,PC)	@@aa			I	H	N	Z	V	C
MOV	MOV.B #xx:8,Rd	B	2														2	2
	MOV.B Rs,Rd	B		2													2	2
	MOV.B @ERs,Rd	B			2												4	4
	MOV.B @(d:16,ERs),Rd	B				4											6	6
	MOV.B @(d:24,ERs),Rd	B					8										10	10
	MOV.B @ERs+,Rd	B						2									6	6
	MOV.B @aa:8,Rd	B							2								4	4
	MOV.B @aa:16,Rd	B								4							6	6
	MOV.B @aa:24,Rd	B									6						8	8
	MOV.B Rs,@ERd	B			2												4	4
	MOV.B Rs,@(d:16,ERd)	B				4											6	6
	MOV.B Rs,@(d:24,ERd)	B					8										10	10
	MOV.B Rs,@-ERd	B						2									6	6
	MOV.B Rs,@aa:8	B							2								4	4
	MOV.B Rs,@aa:16	B								4							6	6
	MOV.B Rs,@aa:24	B									6						8	8
	MOV.W #xx:16,Rd	W	4														4	4
	MOV.W Rs,Rd	W		2													2	2
	MOV.W @ERs,Rd	W			2												4	4
	MOV.W @(d:16,ERs),Rd	W				4											6	6
	MOV.W @(d:24,ERs),Rd	W					8										10	10
	MOV.W @ERs+,Rd	W						2									6	6
	MOV.W @aa:16,Rd	W							4								6	6
	MOV.W @aa:24,Rd	W								6							8	8
	MOV.W Rs,@ERd	W			2												4	4
	MOV.W Rs,@(d:16,ERd)	W				4											6	6
	MOV.W Rs,@(d:24,ERd)	W					8										8	10
	MOV.W Rs,@-ERd	W						2									6	6
	MOV.W Rs,@aa:16	W							4								6	6
	MOV.W Rs,@aa:24	W								6							8	8
	MOV.L #xx:32,ERd	L	6														8	6
	MOV.L ERs,ERd	L		2													2	2
MOV.L @ERs,ERd	L			4												8	8	

Mnemonic		Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)										Condition Code					No. of States			
		Size	#xx	Rn	@ERn	@ (d,ERn)	@ ERn+/@-ERn	@aa	@ (d,PC)	@aa		Operation	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced
MOV	MOV.L @(d:16,ERs),ERd	L				6					@(d:16,ERs)→ERd32	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	10	10	
	MOV.L @(d:24,ERs),ERd	L				10					@(d:24,ERs)→ERd32	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	14	14	
	MOV.L @ERs+,ERd	L				4					ERs→ERd32,ERs32+4→@ERs32	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	10	10	
	MOV.L @aa:16,ERd	L					6				@aa:16→ERd32	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	10	10	
	MOV.L @aa:24,ERd	L					8				@aa:24→ERd32	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	12	12	
	MOV.L ERs,@ERd	L			4						ERs32→@ERd24	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	8	8	
	MOV.L ERs,@(d:16,ERd)	L				6					ERs32→@(d:16,ERd)	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	10	10	
	MOV.L ERs,@(d:24,ERd)	L				10					ERs32→@(d:24,ERd)	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	14	14	
	MOV.L ERs,@-ERd	L				4					ERd32-4→ERd32,ERs32→@ERd	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	10	10	
	MOV.L ERs,@aa:16	L					6				ERs32→@aa:16	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	10	10	
	MOV.L ERs,@aa:24	L					8				ERs32→@aa:24	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	12	12	
POP	POP.W Rn	W							2		@SP→Rn16,SP+2→SP	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	6	6	
	POP.L ERn	L							4		@SP→ERn32,SP+4→SP	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	8	10	
PUSH	PUSH.W Rn	W							2		SP-2→SP,Rn16→@SP	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	6	6	
	PUSH.L ERn	L							4		SP-4→SP,ERn32→@SP	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	8	10	
MOVFP	MOVFP@aa:16,Rd	B				4				@aa:16→Rd (synchronized with E clock)	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	(6)	(6)		
MOVTP	MOVTP Rs,@aa:16	B				4				Rs→@aa:16 (synchronized with E clock)R	—	—	↑	↓	0	—	(6)	(6)		



## (2) Arithmetic Operation Instructions

Mnemonic		Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)										Condition Code					No. of States		
		Size	#xx	Rn	@ERn	@ERn+@-ERn	@aa	@L(PC)	@@aa	I	Operation	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced
ADD	ADD.B #xx:8,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	ADD.B Rs,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	ADD.W #xx:16,Rd	W	4									(1)					4	4	
	ADD.W Rs,Rd	W	2									(1)					2	2	
	ADD.L #xx:32,ERd	L	6									(2)					6	6	
	ADD.L ERs,ERd	L	2									(2)					2	2	
ADDX	ADDX #xx:8,Rd	B	2											(3)			2	2	
	ADDX Rs,Rd	B	2											(3)			2	2	
ADDS	ADDS.L #1,ERd	L	2														2	2	
	ADDS.L #2,ERd	L	2														2	2	
	ADDS.L #4,ERd	L	2														2	2	
INC	INC.B Rd	B	2														2	2	
	INC.W #1,Rd	W	2														2	2	
	INC.W #2,Rd	W	2														2	2	
	INC.L #1,ERd	L	2														2	2	
	INC.L #2,ERd	L	2														2	2	
DAA	DAA Rd	B	2									*					2	2	
SUB	SUB.B Rs,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	SUB.W #xx:16,Rd	W	4									(1)					4	4	
	SUB.W Rs,Rd	W	2									(1)					2	2	
	SUB.L #xx:32,ERd	L	6									(2)					6	6	
	SUB.L ERs,ERd	L	2									(2)					2	2	
SUBX	SUBX.B #xx:8,Rd	B	2											(3)			2	2	
	SUBX.B Rs,Rd	B	2											(3)			2	2	
SUBS	SUBS.L #1,ERd	L	2														2	2	
	SUBS.L #2,ERd	L	2														2	2	
	SUBS.L #4,ERd	L	2														2	2	
DEC	DEC.B Rd	B	2														2	2	
	DEC.W #1,Rd	W	2														2	2	
	DEC.W #2,Rd	W	2														2	2	
	DEC.L #1,ERd	L	2														2	2	
	DEC.L #2,ERd	L	2														2	2	
DAS	DAS Rd	B	2									*					2	2	

Mnemonic		Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)								Operation	Condition Code					No. of States				
		Size	#xx	Rn	@ERn	@d(ERn)	@ERn+/@-ERn	@aa	@d(IPC)		@aa		I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced
NEG	NEG.B Rd	B	2									—	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	2	2
	NEG.W Rd	W	2									—	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	2	2
	NEG.L ERd	L	2									—	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	2	2
CMP	CMP.B #xx:8,Rd	B	2									—	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	2	2
	CMP.B Rs,Rd	B	2									—	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	2	2
	CMP.W #xx:16,Rd	W	4									—	(1)	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	4	4
	CMP.W Rs,Rd	W	2									—	(1)	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	2	2
	CMP.L #xx:32,ERd	L	6									—	(2)	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	4	6
	CMP.L ERs,ERd	L	2									—	(2)	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	2	2
MULXU	MULXU.B Rs,Rd	B	2									—	—	—	—	—	—	—	14	14
	MULXU.W Rs,ERd	W	2									—	—	—	—	—	—	—	22	22
MULXS	MULXS.B Rs,Rd	B	4									—	—	↓	↑	—	—	—	16	16
	MULXS.W Rs,ERd	W	4									—	—	↓	↑	—	—	—	24	24
DIVXU	DIVXU.B Rs,Rd	B	2									—	—	(6)	(7)	—	—	—	14	14
	DIVXU.W Rs,ERd	W	2									—	—	(6)	(7)	—	—	—	22	22
DIVXS	DIVXS.B Rs,Rd	B	4									—	—	(8)	(7)	—	—	—	16	16
	DIVXS.W Rs,ERd	W	4									—	—	(8)	(7)	—	—	—	24	24
EXTU	EXTU.W Rd	W	2									—	—	0	↓	0	—	—	2	2
	EXTU.L ERd	L	2									—	—	0	↓	0	—	—	2	2
EXTS	EXTS.W Rd	W	2									—	—	↓	↑	0	—	—	2	2
	EXTS.L ERd	L	2									—	—	↓	↑	0	—	—	2	2

## (3) Logic Operation Instructions

Mnemonic		Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)								Operation	Condition Code					No. of States				
		Size	#xx	Rn	@ERn	@CLERn	@ERn+/@-ERn	@aa	@LPC		@aa	I	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced
AND	AND.B #xx:8,Rd	B	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	AND.B Rs,Rd	B	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	AND.W #xx:16,Rd	W	4											↓	↓	0	—	4	4	
	AND.W Rs,Rd	W	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	AND.L #xx:32,ERd	L	6											↓	↓	0	—	6	6	
	AND.L ERs,ERd	L	4											↓	↓	0	—	4	4	
OR	OR.B #xx:8,Rd	B	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	OR.B Rs,Rd	B	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	OR.W #xx:16,Rd	W	4											↓	↓	0	—	4	4	
	OR.W Rs,Rd	W	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	OR.L #xx:32,ERd	L	6											↓	↓	0	—	6	6	
	OR.L ERs,ERd	L	4											↓	↓	0	—	4	4	
XOR	XOR.B #xx:8,Rd	B	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	XOR.B Rs,Rd	B	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	XOR.W #xx:16,Rd	W	4											↓	↓	0	—	4	4	
	XOR.W Rs,Rd	W	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	XOR.L #xx:32,ERd	L	6											↓	↓	0	—	6	6	
	XOR.L ERs,ERd	L	4											↓	↓	0	—	4	4	
NOT	NOT.B Rd	B	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	NOT.W Rd	W	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	
	NOT.L ERd	L	2											↓	↓	0	—	2	2	

## (4) Shift Instructions

Mnemonic		Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)								Operation	Condition Code					No. of States				
		Size	#xx	Rn	@ERn	@d(ERn)	@ERn+/@-ERn	@aa	@d(LPC)		@aa	I	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced
SHAL	SHAL.B Rd	B	2															2	2	
	SHAL.W Rd	W	2															2	2	
	SHAL.L ERd	L	2															2	2	
SHAR	SHAR.B Rd	B	2															2	2	
	SHAR.W Rd	W	2															2	2	
	SHAR.L ERd	L	2															2	2	
SHLL	SHLL.B Rd	B	2															2	2	
	SHLL.W Rd	W	2															2	2	
	SHLL.L ERd	L	2															2	2	
SHLR	SHLR.B Rd	B	2															2	2	
	SHLR.W Rd	W	2															2	2	
	SHLR.L ERd	L	2															2	2	
ROTXL	ROTXL.B Rd	B	2															2	2	
	ROTXL.W Rd	W	2															2	2	
	ROTXL.L ERd	L	2															2	2	
ROTXR	ROTXR.B Rd	B	2															2	2	
	ROTXR.W Rd	W	2															2	2	
	ROTXR.L ERd	L	2															2	2	
ROTL	ROTL.B Rd	B	2															2	2	
	ROTL.W Rd	W	2															2	2	
	ROTL.L ERd	L	2															2	2	
ROTR	ROTR.B Rd	B	2															2	2	
	ROTR.W Rd	W	2															2	2	
	ROTR.L ERd	L	2															2	2	

## (5) Bit Manipulation Instructions

Mnemonic		Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)								Condition Code					No. of States				
		Size	#xx	Rn	@ERn	@d(ERn)	@ERn+@-ERn	@aa	@d(LPC)	@@aa	I	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced
BSET	BSET #xx:3,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	BSET #xx:3,@ERd	B		4													8	8	
	BSET #xx:3,@aa:8	B					4										8	8	
	BSET Rn,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	BSET Rn,@ERd	B		4													8	8	
	BSET Rn,@aa:8	B					4										8	8	
BCLR	BCLR #xx:3,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	BCLR #xx:3,@ERd	B		4													8	8	
	BCLR #xx:3,@aa:8	B					4										8	8	
	BCLR Rn,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	BCLR Rn,@ERd	B		4													8	8	
	BCLR Rn,@aa:8	B					4										8	8	
BNOT	BNOT #xx:3,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	BNOT #xx:3,@ERd	B		4													8	8	
	BNOT #xx:3,@aa:8	B					4										8	8	
	BNOT Rn,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	BNOT Rn,@ERd	B		4													8	8	
	BNOT Rn,@aa:8	B					4										8	8	
BTST	BTST #xx:3,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	BTST #xx:3,@ERd	B		4													6	6	
	BTST #xx:3,@aa:8	B					4										6	6	
	BTST Rn,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	BTST Rn,@ERd	B		4													6	6	
	BTST Rn,@aa:8	B					4										6	6	
BLD	BLD #xx:3,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	BLD #xx:3,@ERd	B		4													6	6	
	BLD #xx:3,@aa:8	B					4										6	6	
BILD	BILD #xx:3,Rd	B	2														2	2	
	BILD #xx:3,@ERd	B		4													6	6	
	BILD #xx:3,@aa:8	B					4										6	6	

Mnemonic		Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)								Operation	Condition Code					No. of States				
		Size	#xx	Rn	@ERn	@ (d)ERn	@ ERn+/@-ERn	@aa	@ (d)PC		@aa		I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced
BST	BST #xx:3,Rd	B		2														2	2	
	BST #xx:3,@ERd	B			4													8	8	
	BST #xx:3,@aa:8	B						4										8	8	
BIST	BIST #xx:3,Rd	B		2														2	2	
	BIST #xx:3,@ERd	B			4													8	8	
	BIST #xx:3,@aa:8	B						4										8	8	
BAND	BAND #xx:3,Rd	B		2												↓		2	2	
	BAND #xx:3,@ERd	B			4											↓		6	6	
	BAND #xx:3,@aa:8	B						4								↓		6	6	
BIAND	BIAND #xx:3,Rd	B		2												↓		2	2	
	BIAND #xx:3,@ERd	B			4											↓		6	6	
	BIAND #xx:3,@aa:8	B						4								↓		6	6	
BOR	BOR #xx:3,Rd	B		2												↓		2	2	
	BOR #xx:3,@ERd	B			4											↓		6	6	
	BOR #xx:3,@aa:8	B						4								↓		6	6	
BIOR	BIOR #xx:3,Rd	B		2												↓		2	2	
	BIOR #xx:3,@ERd	B			4											↓		6	6	
	BIOR #xx:3,@aa:8	B						4								↓		6	6	
BXOR	BXOR #xx:3,Rd	B		2												↓		2	2	
	BXOR #xx:3,@ERd	B			4											↓		6	6	
	BXOR #xx:3,@aa:8	B						4								↓		6	6	
BIXOR	BIXOR #xx:3,Rd	B		2												↓		2	2	
	BIXOR #xx:3,@ERd	B			4											↓		6	6	
	BIXOR #xx:3,@aa:8	B						4								↓		6	6	

## (6) Branch Instructions

	Mnemonic	Size	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)							Operation	Branch condition	Condition Code					No. of States			
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d,ERn)	@ERn+/@-ERn	@aa	@(d,PC)			@@aa	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced
Bcc	BRA d:8(BTd:8)	—						2		if condition is true then PC←PC+d else next;	Always	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4	
	BRA d:16(BTd:16)	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BRN d:8(BFd:8)	—						2			Never	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BRN d:16(BFd:16)	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BHI d:8	—						2			C ∨ Z = 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BHI d:16	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BLS d:8	—						2			C ∨ Z = 1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BLS d:16	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BCC d:8(BHS d:8)	—						2			C = 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BCC d:16(BHS d:16)	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BCS d:8(BLO d:8)	—						2			C = 1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BCS d:16(BLO d:16)	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BNE d:8	—						2			Z = 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BNE d:16	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BEQ d:8	—						2			Z = 1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BEQ d:16	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BVC d:8	—						2			V = 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BVC d:16	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BVS d:8	—						2			V = 1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BVS d:16	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BPL d:8	—						2			N = 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BPL d:16	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	BMI d:8	—						2			N = 1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
	BMI d:16	—						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
BGE d:8	—						2		N ⊕ V = 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4		
BGE d:16	—						4			—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6		
BLT d:8	—						2		N ⊕ V = 1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4		
BLT d:16	—						4			—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6		
BGT d:8	—						2		Z ∨ (N ⊕ V) = 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4		
BGT d:16	—						4			—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6		
BLE d:8	—						2		Z ∨ (N ⊕ V) = 1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4	4		
BLE d:16	—						4			—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6		

Mnemonic		Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)								Operation	Branch condition	Condition Code					No. of States				
		Size	#xx	Rn	@ERn	@ (d)ERn	@ ERn+/@-ERn	@aa	@ (d)PC			@ @aa		I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced
JMP	JMP @ERn	—			2												4	4			
	JMP @aa:24	—					4										6	6			
	JMP @ @aa:8	—							2								8	10			
BSR	BSR d:8	—						2		PC←-SP, PC←PC+d:8							6	8			
	BSR d:16	—						4		PC←-SP, PC←PC+d:16							8	10			
JSR	JSR @ERn	—			2					PC←-SP, PC←ERn							6	8			
	JSR @aa:24	—					4			PC←-SP, PC←aa:24							8	10			
	JSR @ @aa:8	—							2	PC←-SP, PC← @aa:8							8	12			
RTS	RTS	—							2	PC←-SP+							8	10			



## (7) System Control Instructions

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)	Size	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)								Operation	Condition Code					No. of States					
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d,ERn)	@ERn+/@-ERn	@aa	@(d,PC)	@@aa		I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced			
TRAPA	TRAPA #x:2	—									2	PC→ @-SP, CCR→@-SP, <vector> → PC	(1)	—	—	—	—	—	—	14	14	
RTE	RTE	—										CCR←@SP+,PC←@SP+	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	10	10
SLEEP	SLEEP	—										Transition to power-down state	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	2	2	
LDC	LDC #xx:8,CCR	B	2									#xx:8→CCR	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	2	2
	LDC Rs,CCR	B		2								Rs8→CCR	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	2	2
	LDC @ERs,CCR	W			4							@ERs→CCR	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	6	6
	LDC @(d:16,ERs),CCR	W				6						@(d:16,ERs)→CCR	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	8	8
	LDC @(d:16,ERs),CCR	W					10					@(d:24,ERs)→CCR	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	12	12
	LDC @ERs+,CCR	W					4					@ERs→CCR,ERs32+2→ERs32	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	8	8
	LDC @aa:16,CCR	W						6				@aa:16→CCR	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	8	8
	LDC @aa:24,CCR	W							8			@aa:24→CCR	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	10	10
STC	STC CCR,Rd	B		2								CCR→Rd8	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	2	2
	STC CCR,@ERd	W			4							CCR→@ERd	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6	6
	STC CCR,@(d:16,ERs)	W				6						CCR→@(d:16,ERs24)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	8	8
	STC CCR,@(d:24,ERs)	W					10					CCR→@(d:24,ERs24)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	12	12
	STC CCR,@-ERs	W					4					ERd32-2→ERd24,CCR→@ERd24	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	8	8
	STC CCR,@aa:16	W						6				CCR→@aa:16	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	8	8
	STC CCR,@aa:24	W							8			CCR→@aa:24	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	10	10
ANDC	ANDC #xx:8,CCR	B	2									CCR ^#xx:8→CCR	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	2	2
ORC	ORC #xx:8,CCR	B	2									CCR V#xx:8→CCR	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	2	2
XORC	XORC #xx:8,CCR	B	2									CCR@#xx:8→CCR	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	↑	↓	2	2
NOP	NOP	—									2	PC←PC+2	—	↓	—	—	—	—	—	—	2	2

## (8) Block Transfer Instructions

Mnemonic		Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)										Operation	Condition Code					No. of States		
		Size	#xx	Rn	@ERn	@ (d)ERn	@ERn+/@-ERn	@aa	@ (d)IPC	@@aa			I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Ad- vanced
EEPMOV	EEPMOV.B	—									4	if R4L ≠ 0 Repeat @R5→@R6 R5+1→R5 R6+1→R6 R4L-1→R4L Until R4L = 0 else next;	—	—	—	—	—	—	8+4n <sup>*2</sup>	8+4n <sup>*2</sup>
	EEPMOV.W	—									4	if R4 ≠ 0 Repeat @R5→@R6 R5+1→R5 R6+1→R6 R4L-1→R4L Until R4 = 0 else next;	—	—	—	—	—	—	8+4n <sup>*2</sup>	8+4n <sup>*2</sup>

- Notes:
- The number of states is the number of states required for execution when the instruction and its operands are located in on-chip memory. For other cases see section 2.6, Number of States Required for Execution.
  - n is the value set in register R4L or R4.
    - Set to 1 when a carry or borrow occurs at bit 11; otherwise cleared to 0.
    - Set to 1 when a carry or borrow occurs at bit 27; otherwise cleared to 0.
    - Retains its previous value when the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.
    - Set to 1 when the adjustment produces a carry; otherwise retains its previous value.
    - The number of states required for execution of an instruction that transfers data in synchronization with the E clock is variable.
    - Set to 1 when the divisor is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.
    - Set to 1 when the divisor is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.
    - Set to 1 when the quotient is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

## 2.4 Instruction Codes

Table 2.3 Instruction Codes

Instruction	Mnemonic	Size	Instruction Format																	
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte								
ADD	ADD.B #xx:8,Rd	B	8	rd	IMM															
	ADD.B Rs,Rd	B	0	8	rs	rd														
	ADD.W #xx:16,Rd	W	7	9	1	rd	IMM													
	ADD.W Rs,Rd	W	0	9	rs	rd														
	ADD.L #xx:32,ERd	L	7	A	1	0:erd					IMM									
ADDS	ADD.L ERs,ERd	L	0	A	1:ers	0:erd														
	ADDS #1,ERd	L	0	B	0	0:erd														
	ADDS #2,ERd	L	0	B	8	0:erd														
	ADDS #4,ERd	L	0	B	9	0:erd														
	ADDS #xx:8,Rd	B	9	rd	IMM															
AND	ADDX Rs,Rd	B	0	E	rs	rd														
	AND.B #xx:8,Rd	B	E	rd	IMM															
	AND.B Rs,Rd	B	1	6	rs	rd														
	AND.W #xx:16,Rd	W	7	9	6	rd	IMM													
	AND.W Rs,Rd	W	6	6	rs	rd														
ANDC	AND.L #xx:32,ERd	L	7	A	6	0:erd														
	AND.L ERs,ERd	L	0	1	F	0	6	6	0:ers	0:erd										
	ANDC #xx:8,CCR	B	0	6	IMM															
	BAND #xx:3,Rd	B	7	6	0:IMM	rd														
	BAND #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	C	0:erd	0	7	6	0:IMM	0										
Bcc	BAND #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	E	abs		7	6	0:IMM	0										
	BRA d:8 (BT d:8)	—	4	0	disp															
	BRA d:16 (BT d:16)	—	5	8	0	0	disp													
	BRN d:8 (BF d:8)	—	4	1	disp															
	BRN d:16 (BF d:16)	—	5	8	1	0	disp													
	BHI d:8	—	4	2	disp															
	BHI d:16	—	5	8	2	0	disp													
	BLS d:8	—	4	3	disp															
	BLS d:16	—	5	8	3	0	disp													
	BCC d:8 (BHS d:8)	—	4	4	disp															
BCC d:16 (BHS d:16)	—	5	8	4	0	disp														
BCCS d:8 (BLO d:8)	—	4	5	disp																

Instruction	Mnemonic	Size	Instruction Format																		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte									
Bcc	BCS d:16 (BLO d:16)	—	5	8	5	0	disp														
	BNE d:8	—	4	6	disp																
	BNE d:16	—	5	8	6	0	disp														
	BEQ d:8	—	4	7	disp																
	BEQ d:16	—	5	8	7	0	disp														
	BVC d:8	—	4	8	disp																
	BVC d:16	—	5	8	8	0	disp														
	BVS d:8	—	4	9	disp																
	BVS d:16	—	5	8	9	0	disp														
	BPL d:8	—	4	A	disp																
	BPL d:16	—	5	8	A	0	disp														
	BMI d:8	—	4	B	disp																
	BMI d:16	—	5	8	B	0	disp														
	BGE d:8	—	4	C	disp																
	BGE d:16	—	5	8	C	0	disp														
	BLT d:8	—	4	D	disp																
BLT d:16	—	5	8	D	0	disp															
BGT d:8	—	4	E	disp																	
BGT d:16	—	5	8	E	0	disp															
BLE d:8	—	4	F	disp																	
BLE d:16	—	5	8	F	0	disp															
BCLR	BCLR #xx:3,Rd	B	7	2	0	IMM	rd														
	BCLR #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	D	0	erd	0	7	2	0	IMM	0									
	BCLR #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	F	abs	7	2	0	IMM	0											
	BCLR Rn,Rd	B	6	2	rn	rd															
	BCLR Rn,@ERd	B	7	D	0	erd	0	6	2	m	0										
	BCLR Rn,@aa:8	B	7	F	abs	6	2	rn	0												
BIAND	BIAND #xx:3,Rd	B	7	6	1	IMM	rd														
	BIAND #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	C	0	erd	0	7	6	1	IMM	0									
	BIAND #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	E	abs	7	6	1	IMM	0											
BILD	BILD #xx:3,Rd	B	7	7	1	IMM	rd														
	BILD #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	C	0	erd	0	7	7	1	IMM	0									
BILD #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	E	abs	7	7	1	IMM	0												

Instruction	Mnemonic	Size	Instruction Format																	
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte								
BIOR	BIOR #xx:3,Rd	B	7	4	1	IMM	rd													
	BIOR #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	C	0	erd	0	7	4	1	IMM	0								
	BIOR #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	E		abs		7	4	1	IMM	0								
BIST	BIST #xx:3,Rd	B	6	7	1	IMM	rd													
	BIST #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	D	0	erd	0	6	7	1	IMM	0								
	BIST #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	F		abs		6	7	1	IMM	0								
BIXOR	BIXOR #xx:3,Rd	B	7	5	1	IMM	rd													
	BIXOR #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	C	0	erd	0	7	5	1	IMM	0								
	BIXOR #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	E		abs		7	5	1	IMM	0								
BLD	BLD #xx:3,Rd	B	7	7	0	IMM	rd													
	BLD #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	C	0	erd	0	7	7	0	IMM	0								
	BLD #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	E		abs		7	7	0	IMM	0								
BNOT	BNOT #xx:3,Rd	B	7	1	0	IMM	rd													
	BNOT #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	D	0	erd	0	7	1	0	IMM	0								
	BNOT #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	F		abs		7	1	0	IMM	0								
BNOT Rn,Rd	BNOT Rn,Rd	B	6	1	rn	rd														
	BNOT Rn,@ERd	B	7	D	0	erd	0	6	1	rn	0									
	BNOT Rn,@aa:8	B	7	F		abs		6	1	rn	0									
BOR	BOR #xx:3,Rd	B	7	4	0	IMM	rd													
	BOR #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	C	0	erd	0	7	4	0	IMM	0								
	BOR #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	E		abs		7	4	0	IMM	0								
BSET	BSET #xx:3,Rd	B	7	0	0	IMM	rd													
	BSET #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	D	0	erd	0	7	0	0	IMM	0								
	BSET #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	F		abs		7	0	0	IMM	0								
BSET Rn,Rd	BSET Rn,Rd	B	6	0	rn	rd														
	BSET Rn,@ERd	B	7	D	0	erd	0	6	0	rn	0									
	BSET Rn,@aa:8	B	7	F		abs		6	0	rn	0									
BSR	BSR dt8	—	5	5		disp														
	BSR dt16	—	5	C	0	0	disp													
	BSR #xx:3,Rd	B	6	7	0	IMM	rd													
BST	BST #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	D	0	erd	0	6	7	0	IMM	0								
	BST #xx:3,@aa:8	B	7	F		abs		6	7	0	IMM	0								

Instruction	Mnemonic	Size	Instruction Format																	
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte								
BTST	BTST #xx:3,Rd	B	7	3	0	IMM	rd													
	BTST #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	C	0	erd	0													
	BTST #xx:3,@aa8	B	7	E	abs															
	BTST Rn,Rd	B	6	3	rn	rd														
	BTST Rn,@ERd	B	7	C	0	erd	0	6	3	rn	0									
BXOR	BTST Rn,@aa8	B	7	E	abs															
	BXOR #xx:3,Rd	B	7	5	0	IMM	rd													
	BXOR #xx:3,@ERd	B	7	C	0	erd	0	7	5	0	IMM	0								
	BXOR #xx:3,@aa8	B	7	E	abs															
	CMPB #xx:8,Rd	B	A	rd	IMM															
CMP	CMPB Rs,Rd	B	1	C	rs	rd														
	CMPW #xx:16,Rd	W	7	9	2	rd	IMM													
	CMPW Rs,Rd	W	1	D	rs	rd														
	CMPL #xx:32,ERd	L	7	A	2	0	erd													
	CMPLE Rs,ERd	L	1	F	1	ers	0	erd												
	DAA Rd	B	0	F	0	rd														
	DAS Rd	B	1	F	0	rd														
	DEC Rd	B	1	A	0	rd														
	DEC.W #1,Rd	W	1	B	5	rd														
	DEC.W #2,Rd	W	1	B	D	rd														
DIVXS	DECL #1,ERd	L	1	B	7	0	erd													
	DECL #2,ERd	L	1	B	F	0	erd													
	DIVXS.B Rs,Rd	B	0	1	D	0	5	1	rs	rd										
	DIVXS.W Rs,ERd	W	0	1	D	0	5	3	rs	0	erd									
	DIVXU.B Rs,Rd	B	5	1	rs	rd														
DIVXU	DIVXU.W Rs,ERd	W	5	3	rs	0	erd													
	DIVXU.W Rs,ERd	W	5	3	rs	0	erd													
EEPMOV	EEPMOV.B	—	7	B	5	C	5	9	8	F										
	EEPMOV.W	—	7	B	D	4	5	9	8	F										
EXTS	EXTS.W Rd	W	1	7	D	rd														
	EXTS.L ERd	L	1	7	F	0	erd													
EXTU	EXTU.W Rd	W	1	7	5	rd														
	EXTU.L ERd	L	1	7	7	0	erd													
INC	INC.B Rd	B	0	A	0	rd														
	INC.W #1,Rd	W	0	B	5	rd														
	INC.W #2,Rd	W	0	B	D	rd														

Instruction	Mnemonic	Size	Instruction Format																		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte									
INC	INC.L #1,ERd	L	0	B	7	0:erd															
	INC.L #2,ERd	L	0	B	F	0:erd															
JMP	JMP @ERn	—	5	9	0:ern	0															
	JMP @aa24	—	5	A		abs															
JSR	JMP @aa8	—	5	B		abs															
	JSR @ERn	—	5	D	0:ern	0															
JSR	JSR @aa24	—	5	E		abs															
	JSR @aa8	—	5	F		abs															
LDC	LDC #xx8,CCR	B	0	7	IMM																
	LDC Rs,CCR	B	0	3	0	rs															
	LDC @ERS,CCR	W	0	1	4	0	6	9	0:ers	0											
	LDC @(d:16,ERs),CCR	W	0	1	4	0	6	F	0:ers	0											
	LDC @(d:24,ERs),CCR	W	0	1	4	0	7	8	0:ers	0	6	B	2	0	0	0					
	LDC @ERS+,CCR	W	0	1	4	0	6	D	0:ers	0											
	LDC @aa16,CCR	W	0	1	4	0	6	B	0	0											
	LDC @aa24,CCR	W	0	1	4	0	6	B	2	0	0	0	0								
	MOV.B #xx:8,Rd	B	F	rd	IMM																
	MOV.B Rs,Rd	B	0	C	rs	rd															
	MOV.B @ERS,Rd	B	6	8	0:ers	rd															
	MOV.B @(d:16,ERs),Rd	B	6	E	0:ers	rd															
MOV.B @(d:24,ERs),Rd	B	7	8	0:ers	rd																
MOV.B @ERS+,Rd	B	6	C	0:ers	rd																
MOV.B @aa8,Rd	B	2	rd		abs																
MOV.B @aa16,Rd	B	6	A	0	rd																
MOV.B @aa24,Rd	B	6	A	2	rd	0	0														
MOV.B Rs,@ERd	B	6	8	1:erd	rs																
MOV.B Rs,@(d:16,ERd)	B	6	E	1:erd	rs																
MOV.B Rs,@(d:24,ERd)	B	7	8	0:erd	rs																
MOV.B Rs,@-ERd	B	6	C	1:erd	rs																
MOV.B Rs,@aa8	B	3	rs		abs																
MOV.B Rs,@aa16	B	6	A	8	rs																
MOV.B Rs,@aa24	B	6	A	A	rs	0	0														
MOV.W #xx:16,Rd	W	7	9	0:rd		IMM															
MOV.W Rs,Rd	W	0	D	rs	rd																
MOV.W @ERS,Rd	W	6	9	0:ers	rd																

Instruction	Mnemonic	Size	Instruction Format																		
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte									
MOV	MOV.W @(d:16,ERs),Rd	W	6	F	0	ers	rd	disp													
	MOV.W @(d:24,ERs),Rd	W	7	8	0	ers	0	6	B	2	rd	0	0	disp							
	MOV.W @ERs+,Rd	W	6	D	0	ers	rd														
	MOV.W @aa:16,Rd	W	6	B	0	rd		abs													
	MOV.W @aa:24,Rd	W	6	B	2	rd		abs													
	MOV.W Rs,@ERd	W	6	9	1	erd	rs														
	MOV.W Rs,@(d:16,ERd)	W	6	F	1	erd	rs	disp													
	MOV.W Rs,@(d:24,ERd)	W	7	8	1	erd	0	6	B	A	rs	0	0	disp							
	MOV.W Rs,@-ERd	W	6	D	1	erd	rs														
	MOV.W Rs,@aa:16	W	6	B	8	rs		abs													
	MOV.W Rs,@aa:24	W	6	B	A	rs		abs													
	MOV.L #x:32,Rd	L	7	A	0	0	erd		IMM												
	MOV.L ERs,ERd	L	0	F	1	ers	0	erd													
	MOV.L @ERs,ERd	L	0	1	0	0	6	9	0	ers	0	erd									
	MOV.L @(d:16,ERs),ERd	L	0	1	0	0	6	F	0	ers	0	erd	disp								
	MOV.L @(d:24,ERs),ERd	L	0	1	0	0	7	8	0	ers	0	6	B	2	0	erd	0	0	disp		
	MOV.L @ERs+,ERd	L	0	1	0	0	6	D	0	ers	0	erd									
	MOV.L @aa:16,ERd	L	0	1	0	0	6	B	0	ers	0	erd	abs								
	MOV.L @aa:24,ERd	L	0	1	0	0	6	B	2	0	erd	0	0	abs							
	MOV.L ERs,@ERd	L	0	1	0	0	6	9	1	erd	0	ers									
MOV.L ERs,@(d:16,ERd)	L	0	1	0	0	6	F	1	erd	0	ers	disp									
MOV.L ERs,@(d:24,ERd)	L	0	1	0	0	7	8	0	erd	0	6	B	A	0	ers	0	0	disp			
MOV.L ERs,@-ERd	L	0	1	0	0	6	D	1	erd	0	ers										
MOV.L ERs,@aa:16	L	0	1	0	0	6	B	8	0	ers	abs										
MOV.L ERs,@aa:24	L	0	1	0	0	6	B	A	0	ers	0	0	abs								
MOV.FPE	MOV.FPE @aa:16,Rd	B	6	A	4	rd		abs													
MOV.TPE	MOV.TPE Rs,@aa:16	B	6	A	C	rs		abs													
MUL.XS	MUL.XS.B Rs,Rd	B	0	1	C	0	5	0	rs	rd											
	MUL.XS.W Rs,ERd	W	0	1	C	0	5	2	rs	0	erd										
MUL.XU	MUL.XU.B Rs,Rd	B	5	0	rs	rd															
	MUL.XU.W Rs,ERd	W	5	2	rs	0	erd														
NEG	NEG.B Rd	B	1	7	8	rd															
	NEG.W Rd	W	1	7	9	rd															
NOP	NEG.L ERd	L	1	7	B	0	erd														
	NOP	—	0	0	0	0															



Instruction	Mnemonic	Size	Instruction Format																	
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte								
NOT	NOT.B Rd	B	1	7	0	rd														
	NOT.W Rd	W	1	7	1	rd														
	NOT.L ERd	L	1	7	3	:0:erd														
OR	OR.B #xx:8,Rd	B	C	rd	IMM															
	OR.B Rs,Rd	B	1	4	rs	rd														
	OR.W #xx:16,Rd	W	7	9	4	rd														
	OR.W Rs,Rd	W	6	4	rs	rd														
	OR.L #xx:32,ERd	L	7	A	4	:0:erd														
OR.L ERs,ERd	L	0	1	F	0															
ORC	ORC #xx:8,CCR	B	0	4	IMM															
POP	POP.W Rn	W	6	D	7	rn														
PUSH	POP.L ERn	L	0	1	0	0														
	PUSH.W Rn	W	6	D	F	rn														
	PUSH.L ERn	L	0	1	0	0														
ROT	ROT.L B Rd	B	1	2	8	rd														
	ROT.L W Rd	W	1	2	9	rd														
	ROT.L L ERd	L	1	2	B	:0:erd														
ROTR	ROTR.B Rd	B	1	3	8	rd														
	ROTR.W Rd	W	1	3	9	rd														
	ROTR.L ERd	L	1	3	B	:0:erd														
ROTXL	ROTXL.B Rd	B	1	2	0	rd														
	ROTXL.W Rd	W	1	2	1	rd														
	ROTXL.L ERd	L	1	2	3	:0:erd														
ROTXR	ROTXR.B Rd	B	1	3	0	rd														
	ROTXR.W Rd	W	1	3	1	rd														
	ROTXR.L ERd	L	1	3	3	:0:erd														
RTE	RTE	—	5	6	7	0														
RTS	RTS	—	5	4	7	0														
SHAL	SHAL.B Rd	B	1	0	8	rd														
	SHAL.W Rd	W	1	0	9	rd														
	SHAL.L ERd	L	1	0	B	:0:erd														
SHAR	SHAR.B Rd	B	1	1	8	rd														
	SHAR.W Rd	W	1	1	9	rd														
	SHAR.L ERd	L	1	1	B	:0:erd														

Instruction	Mnemonic	Size	Instruction Format																	
			1st byte	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte	9th byte	10th byte								
SHLL	SHLL.B Rd	B	1	0	0	rd														
	SHLL.W Rd	W	1	0	1	rd														
	SHLLL.ERd	L	1	0	3	:0:erd														
SHLR	SHLR.B Rd	B	1	1	0	rd														
	SHLR.W Rd	W	1	1	1	rd														
	SHLR.L.ERd	L	1	1	3	:0:erd														
SLEEP	SLEEP	—	0	1	8	0														
STC	STC.COR.Rd	B	0	2	0	rd														
	STC.COR.@ERd	W	0	1	4	0	6	9	1:erd	0										
	STC.COR.@(d:16,ERd)	W	0	1	4	0	6	F	1:erd	0	disp									
	STC.COR.@(d:24,ERd)	W	0	1	4	0	7	8	0:erd	0	6	B	A	0	0	0	0	0	0	disp
	STC.COR.@-ERd	W	0	1	4	0	6	D	1:erd	0										
	STC.COR.@aa:16	W	0	1	4	0	6	B	8	0	abs									
STC.COR.@aa:24R	W	0	1	4	0	6	B	A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	abs	
SUB	SUB.B Rs,Rd	B	1	8	rs	rd														
	SUB.W #xx:16,Rd	W	7	9	3	rd				IMM										
	SUB.W Rs,Rd	W	1	9	rs	rd														
	SUB.L #xx:32,ERd	L	7	A	3	:0:erd					IMM									
	SUB.L ERs,ERd	L	1	A	1	ers	:0:erd													
SUBS	SUBS #1,ERd	L	1	B	0	:0:erd														
	SUBS #2,ERd	L	1	B	8	:0:erd														
	SUBS #4,ERd	L	1	B	9	:0:erd														
	SUBS #xx:8,Rd	B	B	B	rd	IMM														
	SUBS Rs,Rd	B	1	E	rs	rd														
TRAPA	TRAPA #x:2	—	5	7	00:IMM	0														
XOR	XOR.B #xx:8,Rd	B	D	rd	IMM															
	XOR.B Rs,Rd	B	1	5	rs	rd														
	XOR.W #xx:16,Rd	W	7	9	5	rd				IMM										
	XOR.W Rs,Rd	W	6	5	rs	rd														
	XOR.L #xx:32,ERd	L	7	A	4	:0:erd					IMM									
XOR.L ERs,ERd	L	0	1	F	0	6	5	0:ers	0:erd											
XORC	XORC #xx:8,CCR	B	0	5	IMM															

Legend:

IMM: Immediate data (2, 3, 8, 16, or 32 bits)

abs: Absolute address (8, 16, or 24 bits)

disp: Displacement (8, 16, or 24 bits)

rs, rd, rn: Register field (4 bits specifying an 8-bit or 16-bit register. rs corresponds to operand symbols such as Rs, rd corresponds to operand symbols such as Rd, and rn corresponds to the operand symbol Rn.)

ers, erd, ern: Register field (3 bits specifying a 32-bit register. ers corresponds to operand symbols such as ERs, erd corresponds to operand symbols such as ERd, and ern corresponds to the operand symbol ERn.)

The register fields specify general registers as follows.

Address Register 32-bit Register		16-bit Register		8-bit Register	
Register Field	General Register	Register Field	General Register	Register Field	General Register
000	ER0	0000	R0	0000	R0H
001	ER1	0001	R1	0001	R1H
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
111	ER7	0111	R7	0111	R7H
		1000	E0	1000	R0L
		1001	E1	1001	R1L
		⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
		1111	E7	1111	R7L

## 2.5 Operation Code Map

Tables 2.4 to 2.6 show an operation code map.

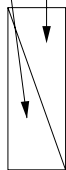
**Table 2.4 Operation Code Map (1)**

**Operation Code:**

1st byte		2nd byte	
AH	AL	BH	BL

Instruction when most significant bit of BH is 0.

Instruction when most significant bit of BH is 1.



AL	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	
AH	0	NOP Table 2.5	STC Table 2.5	LDC Table 2.5	ORG Table 2.5	XORG Table 2.5	ANDC Table 2.5	LDC Table 2.5	ADD Table 2.5	ADD Table 2.5	Table 2.5	Table 2.5	Table 2.5	MOV Table 2.5	ADDD Table 2.5	Table 2.5	
	1	Table 2.5	Table 2.5	Table 2.5	OR.B Table 2.5	XOR.B Table 2.5	AND.B Table 2.5	Table 2.5	SUB.B Table 2.5	SUB.W Table 2.5	Table 2.5	Table 2.5	CMP Table 2.5	SUBX Table 2.5			
	2	MOV/B															
	3	MOV/B															
	4	BRA	BRN	BHI	BLS	BCC	BCS	BNE	BEQ	BVC	BVS	BPL	BMI	BGE	BLT	BGT	BLE
	5	MULXU	DIVXU	MULXU	DIVXU	RTS	BSR	RTE	TRAPA	Table 2.5		JMP		BSR		JSR	
	6	BSET	BNOT	BCLR	BTST	OR.W BOR	XOR.W BXOR	AND.W BAND	BST BLD	BIST BLD							
	7					BIOR	BIXOR	BIAND		MOV	Table 2.5	Table 2.5	Table 2.5	Table 2.5	Table 2.5	Table 2.5	Table 2.5
	8	ADD															
	9	ADDD															
	A	CMP															
	B	SUBX															
	C	OR															
	D	XOR															
	E	AND															
	F	MOV															

Table 2.5 Operation Code Map (2)

Operation Code:

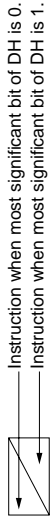
1st byte		2nd byte	
AH	AL	BH	BL

BH	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
AH	MOV	LDC		STC		SLEEP		Table 2.6		Table 2.6		Table 2.6		Table 2.6		Table 2.6
0A	INC	ADD														
0B	ADDS	INC		INC		ADDS		ADDS		INC		INC		INC		INC
0F	DAA	MOV														
10	SHLL	SHLL		SHLL		SHAL		SHAL		SHAL		SHAL		SHAL		SHAL
11	SHLR	SHLR		SHLR		SHAR		SHAR		SHAR		SHAR		SHAR		SHAR
12	ROTXL	ROTXL		ROTXL		ROTL		ROTL		ROTL		ROTL		ROTL		ROTL
13	ROTXR	ROTXR		ROTXR		ROTR		ROTR		ROTR		ROTR		ROTR		ROTR
17	NOT	NOT		NOT		EXTU		EXTU		NEG		NEG		NEG		EXTS
1A	DEC	SUB														
1B	SUBS	DEC		DEC		SUB		SUB		DEC		DEC		DEC		DEC
1F	DAS	CMP														
58	BRA	BRN	BHI	BLS	BCC	BCS	BNE	BEQ	BVC	BVS	BPL	BMI	BGE	BLT	BGT	BLE
79	MOV	ADD	CMP	SUB	OR	XOR	AND									
7A	MOV	ADD	CMP	SUB	OR	XOR	AND									

**Table 2.6 Operation Code Map (3)**

**Operation Code:**

1st byte		2nd byte		3rd byte		4th byte	
AH	AL	BH	BL	CH	CL	DH	DL



CL	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
AH\BH\CH	MULXS	MULXS	MULXS													
01C05																
01D05		DIVXS		DIVXS		OR	XOR	AND								
01F06																
7C06*1				BTST												
7C07*1				BTST	BOR	BXOR	BAND	BID	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND
7D06*1	BSET	BNOT	BCLR		BIOR	BIXOR	BAND	BID	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND
7D07*1	BSET	BNOT	BCLR					BST								
7Eaa6*2				BTST												
7Eaa7*2				BTST	BOR	BXOR	BAND	BID	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND
7Faa6*2	BSET	BNOT	BCLR		BIOR	BIXOR	BAND	BID	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND	BAND
7Faa7*2	BSET	BNOT	BCLR					BST								

Notes: 1. r is a register field.  
 2. aa is an absolute address field.

## 2.6 Number of States Required for Instruction Execution

The tables in this section can be used to calculate the number of states required for instruction execution by the H8/300H CPU. Table 2.8 indicates the number of instruction fetch, data read/write, and other cycles occurring in each instruction. Table 2.7 indicates the number of states required for each size. The number of states required for execution of an instruction can be calculated from these two tables as follows:

$$\text{Execution states} = I \times S_I + J \times S_J + K \times S_K + L \times S_L + M \times S_M + N \times S_N$$

**Examples:** Advanced mode, stack located in external memory, on-chip supporting modules accessed with 8-bit bus width, external devices accessed in three states with one wait state and 16-bit bus width.

### 1. BSET #0, @FFFFC7:8

From table 2.8:

$$I = L = 2, \quad J = K = M = N = 0$$

From table 2.7:

$$S_I = 4, \quad S_L = 3$$

$$\text{Number of states required for execution} = 2 \times 4 + 2 \times 3 = 14$$

### 2. JSR @@30

From table 2.8:

$$I = J = K = 2, \quad L = M = N = 0$$

From table 2.7:

$$S_I = S_J = S_K = 4$$

$$\text{Number of states required for execution} = 2 \times 4 + 2 \times 4 + 2 \times 4 = 24$$

Table 2.7 Number of States per Cycle

Cycle		On-Chip Memory	Access Conditions					
			On-Chip Supporting Module		8-Bit Bus		16-Bit Bus	
			8-Bit Bus	16-Bit Bus	2-State Access	3-State Access	2-State Access	3-State Access
Instruction fetch	$S_i$	2	6	3	4	6 + 2 m	2	3 + m*
Branch address read	$S_j$							
Stack operation	$S_k$							
Byte data access	$S_L$		3	2	3 + m			
Word data access	$S_M$		6	4	6 + 2 m			
Internal operation	$S_N$	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Note: \* For the MOVFPE and MOVTPPE instructions, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

Legend:

m: Number of wait states inserted into external device access



Table 2.8 Number of Cycles in Instruction Execution

Instruction	Mnemonic	Branch					
		Instruction Fetch	Address Read	Stack Operation	Byte Data Access	Word Data Access	Internal Operation
		I	J	K	L	M	N
ADD	ADD.B #xx:8,Rd	1					
	ADD.B Rs,Rd	1					
	ADD.W #xx:16,Rd	2					
	ADD.W Rs,Rd	1					
	ADD.L #xx:32,ERd	3					
	ADD.L ERs,ERd	1					
ADDS	ADDS #1/2/4,ERd	1					
ADDX	ADDX #xx:8,Rd	1					
	ADDX Rs,Rd	1					
AND	AND.B #xx:8,Rd	1					
	AND.B Rs,Rd	1					
	AND.W #xx:16,Rd	2					
	AND.W Rs,Rd	1					
	AND.L #xx:32,ERd	3					
	AND.L ERs,ERd	2					
ANDC	ANDC #xx:8,CCR	1					
BAND	BAND #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BAND #xx:3,@ERd	2			1		
	BAND #xx:3,@aa:8	2			1		
Bcc	BRA d:8 (BT d:8)	2					
	BRN d:8 (BF d:8)	2					
	BHI d:8	2					
	BLS d:8	2					
	BCC d:8 (BHS d:8)	2					
	BCS d:8 (BLO d:8)	2					
	BNE d:8	2					
	BEQ d:8	2					
	BVC d:8	2					
	BVS d:8	2					
	BPL d:8	2					
	BMI d:8	2					
	BGE d:8	2					
	BLT d:8	2					

Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction Fetch	Branch	Stack Operation	Byte Data Access	Word Data Access	Internal Operation
			Address Read				
		I	J	K	L	M	N
Bcc	BGT d:8	2					
	BLE d:8	2					
	BRA d:16 (BT d:16)	2					2
	BRN d:16 (BF d:16)	2					2
	BHI d:16	2					2
	BLS d:16	2					2
	BCC d:16 (BHS d:16)	2					2
	BCS d:16 (BLO d:16)	2					2
	BNE d:16	2					2
	BEQ d:16	2					2
	BVC d:16	2					2
	BVS d:16	2					2
	BPL d:16	2					2
	BMI d:16	2					2
	BGE d:16	2					2
	BLT d:16	2					2
	BGT d:16	2					2
BLE d:16	2					2	
BCLR	BCLR #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BCLR #xx:3,@ERd	2			2		
	BCLR #xx:3,@aa:8	2			2		
	BCLR Rn,Rd	1					
	BCLR Rn,@ERd	2			2		
	BCLR Rn,@aa:8	2			2		
BIAND	BIAND #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BIAND #xx:3,@ERd	2			1		
	BIAND #xx:3,@aa:8	2			1		
BILD	BILD #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BILD #xx:3,@ERd	2			1		
	BILD #xx:3,@aa:8	2			1		
BIOR	BIOR #xx:8,Rd	1					
	BIOR #xx:8,@ERd	2			1		
	BIOR #xx:8,@aa:8	2			1		

Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction Fetch	Branch	Stack Operation	Byte Data Access	Word Data Access	Internal Operation
			Address Read				
		I	J	K	L	M	N
BIST	BIST #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BIST #xx:3,@ERd	2			2		
	BIST #xx:3,@aa:8	2			2		
BIXOR	BIXOR #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BIXOR #xx:3,@ERd	2			1		
	BIXOR #xx:3,@aa:8	2			1		
BLD	BLD #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BLD #xx:3,@ERd	2			1		
	BLD #xx:3,@aa:8	2			1		
BNOT	BNOT #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BNOT #xx:3,@ERd	2			2		
	BNOT #xx:3,@aa:8	2			2		
	BNOT Rn,Rd	1					
	BNOT Rn,@ERd	2			2		
	BNOT Rn,@aa:8	2			2		
BOR	BOR #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BOR #xx:3,@ERd	2			1		
	BOR #xx:3,@aa:8	2			1		
BSET	BSET #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BSET #xx:3,@ERd	2			2		
	BSET #xx:3,@aa:8	2			2		
	BSET Rn,Rd	1					
	BSET Rn,@ERd	2			2		
	BSET Rn,@aa:8	2			2		
BSR	BSR d:8	Advanced	2		2		
		Normal	2		1		
	BSR d:16	Advanced	2		2		2
		Normal	2		1		2
BST	BST #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BST #xx:3,@ERd	2			2		
	BST #xx:3,@aa:8	2			2		

Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction Fetch	Branch	Stack Operation	Byte Data Access	Word Data Access	Internal Operation
			Address Read				
		I	J	K	L	M	N
BTST	BTST #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BTST #xx:3,@ERd	2			1		
	BTST #xx:3,@aa:8	2			1		
	BTST Rn,Rd	1					
	BTST Rn,@ERd	2			1		
	BTST Rn,@aa:8	2			1		
BXOR	BXOR #xx:3,Rd	1					
	BXOR #xx:3,@ERd	2			1		
	BXOR #xx:3,@aa:8	2			1		
CMP	CMP.B #xx:8,Rd	1					
	CMP.B Rs,Rd	1					
	CMP.W #xx:16,Rd	2					
	CMP.W Rs,Rd	1					
	CMP.L #xx:32,ERd	3					
	CMP.L ERs,ERd	1					
DAA	DAA Rd	1					
DAS	DAS Rd	1					
DEC	DEC.B Rd	1					
	DEC.W #1/2,Rd	1					
	DEC.L #1/2,ERd	1					
DIVXS	DIVXS.B Rs,Rd	2					12
	DIVXS.W Rs,ERd	2					20
DIVXU	DIVXU.B Rs,Rd	1					12
	DIVXU.W Rs,ERd	1					20
EEPMOV	EEPMOV.B	2			$2n + 2^{*1}$		
	EEPMOV.W	2			$2n + 2^{*1}$		
EXTS	EXTS.W Rd	1					
	EXTS.L ERd	1					
EXTU	EXTU.W Rd	1					
	EXTU.L ERd	1					
INC	INC.B Rd	1					
	INC.W #1/2,Rd	1					
	INC.L #1/2,ERd	1					

Instruction	Mnemonic		Instruction	Branch	Stack	Byte Data	Word Data	Internal	
			Fetch	Address					Operation
			I	J	K	L	M	N	
JMP	JMP @ERn		2						
	JMP @aa:24		2					2	
	JMP @ @aa:8	Advanced	2	2					2
		Normal	2	1					2
JSR	JSR @ERn	Advanced	2		2				
		Normal	2		1				
	JSR @aa:24	Advanced	2		2			2	
		Normal	2		1			2	
	JSR @ @aa:8	Advanced	2	2	2				
		Normal	2	1	1				
LDC	LDC #xx:8,CCR		1						
	LDC Rs,CCR		1						
	LDC @ERs,CCR		2				1		
	LDC @(d:16,ERs),CCR		3				1		
	LDC @(d:24,ERs),CCR		5				1		
	LDC @ERs+,CCR		2				1	2	
	LDC @aa:16,CCR		3				1		
	LDC @aa:24,CCR		4				1		
MOV	MOV.B #xx:8,Rd		1						
	MOV.B Rs,Rd		1						
	MOV.B @ERs,Rd		1			1			
	MOV.B @(d:16,ERs),Rd		2			1			
	MOV.B @(d:24,ERs),Rd		4			1			
	MOV.B @ERs+,Rd		1			1		2	
	MOV.B @aa:8,Rd		1			1			
	MOV.B @aa:16,Rd		2			1			
	MOV.B @aa:24,Rd		3			1			
	MOV.B Rs,@ERd		1			1			
	MOV.B Rs,@(d:16,ERd)		2			1			
	MOV.B Rs,@(d:24,ERd)		4			1			
	MOV.B Rs,@-ERd		1			1		2	
	MOV.B Rs,@aa:8		1			1			
	MOV.B Rs,@aa:16		2			1			
	MOV.B Rs,@aa:24		3			1			

Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction Fetch	Branch	Stack Operation	Byte Data Access	Word Data Access	Internal Operation	
			Address Read					
		I	J	K	L	M	N	
MOV	MOV.W #xx:16,Rd	2						
	MOV.W Rs,Rd	1						
	MOV.W @ERs,Rd	1				1		
	MOV.W @(d:16,ERs),Rd	2				1		
	MOV.W @(d:24,ERs),Rd	4				1		
	MOV.W @ERs+,Rd	1				1	2	
	MOV.W @aa:16,Rd	2				1		
	MOV.W @aa:24,Rd	3				1		
	MOV.W Rs,@ERd	1				1		
	MOV.W Rs,@(d:16,ERd)	2				1		
	MOV.W Rs,@(d:24,ERd)	4				1		
	MOV.W Rs,@-ERd	1				1	2	
	MOV.W Rs,@aa:16	2				1		
	MOV.W Rs,@aa:24	3				1		
	MOV.L #xx:32,ERd	3						
	MOV.L ERs,ERd	1						
	MOV.L @ERs,ERd	2					2	
	MOV.L @(d:16,ERs),ERd	3					2	
	MOV.L @(d:24,ERs),ERd	5					2	
	MOV.L @ERs+,ERd	2					2	2
	MOV.L @aa:16,ERd	3					2	
	MOV.L @aa:24,ERd	4					2	
	MOV.L ERs,@ERd	2					2	
MOV.L ERs,@(d:16,ERd)	3					2		
MOV.L ERs,@(d:24,ERd)	5					2		
MOV.L ERs,@-ERd	2					2	2	
MOV.L ERs,@aa:16	3					2		
MOV.L ERs,@aa:24	4					2		
MOVFPPE	MOVFPPE @:aa:16,Rd	2			1*2			
MOVTPPE	MOVTPPE Rs,@:aa:16	2			1*2			
MULXS	MULXS.B Rs,Rd	2					12	
	MULXS.W Rs,ERd	2					20	
MULXU	MULXU.B Rs,Rd	1					12	
	MULXU.W Rs,ERd	1					20	

Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction	Branch	Stack	Byte Data	Word Data	Internal
		Fetch	Address				
		I	J	K	L	M	N
NEG	NEG.B Rd	1					
	NEG.W Rd	1					
	NEG.L ERd	1					
NOP	NOP	1					
NOT	NOT.B Rd	1					
	NOT.W Rd	1					
	NOT.L ERd	1					
OR	OR.B #xx:8,Rd	1					
	OR.B Rs,Rd	1					
	OR.W #xx:16,Rd	2					
	OR.W Rs,Rd	1					
	OR.L #xx:32,ERd	3					
	OR.L ERs,ERd	2					
ORC	ORC #xx:8,CCR	1					
POP	POP.W Rn	1				1	2
	POP.L ERn	2				2	2
PUSH	PUSH.W Rn	1				1	2
	PUSH.L ERn	1				2	2
ROTL	ROTL.B Rd	1					
	ROTL.W Rd	1					
	ROTL.L ERd	1					
ROTR	ROTR.B Rd	1					
	ROTR.W Rd	1					
	ROTR.L ERd	1					
ROTXL	ROTXL.B Rd	1					
	ROTXL.W Rd	1					
	ROTXL.L ERd	1					
ROTXR	ROTXR.B Rd	1					
	ROTXR.W Rd	1					
	ROTXR.L ERd	1					
RTE	RTE	2		2		2	
RTS	RTS	Advanced	2		2		2
		Normal	2		1		2

Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction Fetch	Branch	Stack Operation	Byte Data Access	Word Data Access	Internal Operation
			Address Read				
		I	J	K	L	M	N
SHAL	SHAL.B Rd	1					
	SHAL.W Rd	1					
	SHAL.L ERd	1					
SHAR	SHAR.B Rd	1					
	SHAR.W Rd	1					
	SHAR.L ERd	1					
SHLL	SHLL.B Rd	1					
	SHLL.W Rd	1					
	SHLL.L ERd	1					
SHLR	SHLR.B Rd	1					
	SHLR.W Rd	1					
	SHLR.L ERd	1					
SLEEP	SLEEP	1					
STC	STC CCR,Rd	1					
	STC CCR,@ERd	2				1	
	STC CCR,@(d:16,ERd)	3				1	
	STC CCR,@(d:24,ERd)	5				1	
	STC CCR,@-ERd	2				1	2
	STC CCR,@aa:16	3				1	
	STC CCR,@aa:24	4				1	
SUB	SUB.B Rs,Rd	1					
	SUB.W #xx:16,Rd	2					
	SUB.W Rs,Rd	1					
	SUB.L #xx:32,ERd	3					
	SUB.L ERs,ERd	1					
SUBS	SUBS #1/2/4,ERd	1					
SUBX	SUBX #xx:8,Rd	1					
	SUBX Rs,Rd	1					
TRAPA	TRAPA #x:2	Advanced	2	2	2		4
		Normal	2	1	2		4



Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction	Branch	Stack	Byte Data	Word Data	Internal
		Fetch	Address				
		I	J	K	L	M	N
XOR	XOR.B #xx:8,Rd	1					
	XOR.B Rs,Rd	1					
	XOR.W #xx:16,Rd	2					
	XOR.W Rs,Rd	1					
	XOR.L #xx:32,ERd	3					
	XOR.L ERs,ERd	2					
XORC	XORC #xx:8,CCR	1					

Notes: 1. When n bytes of data are transferred.

## 2.7 Condition Code Modification

This section indicates the effect of each CPU instruction on the condition code. The notation used in the table is defined below.

m	31 for longword operands, 15 for word operands, 7 for byte operands
$S_i$	The i-th bit of the source operand
$D_i$	The i-th bit of the destination operand
$R_i$	The i-th bit of the result
$D_n$	The specified bit in the destination operand
—	Not affected
↕	Modified according to the result of the instruction (see definition)
0	Always cleared to 0
1	Always set to 1
*	Undetermined (no guaranteed value)
Z'	Z flag before instruction execution
C'	C flag before instruction execution

Table 2.9 Condition Code Modification

Instruction	H	N	Z	V	C	Definition
ADD	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	$H = S_{m-4} \cdot D_{m-4} + D_{m-4} / R_{m-4} + S_{m-4} / R_{m-4}$ $N = R_m$ $Z = /R_m \cdot /R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot /R_0$ $V = S_m \cdot D_m / R_m + S_m / D_m \cdot R_m$ $C = S_m \cdot D_m + D_m / R_m + S_m / R_m$
ADDS	—	—	—	—	—	
ADDX	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	$H = S_{m-4} \cdot D_{m-4} + D_{m-4} / R_{m-4} + S_{m-4} / R_{m-4}$ $N = R_m$ $Z = Z' / R_m \cdot \dots \cdot /R_0$ $V = S_m \cdot D_m / R_m + S_m / D_m \cdot R_m$ $C = S_m \cdot D_m + D_m / R_m + S_m / R_m$
AND	—	↕	↕	O	—	$N = R_m$ $Z = /R_m \cdot /R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot /R_0$
ANDC	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	Stores the corresponding bits of the result
BAND	—	—	—	—	↕	$C = C' \cdot D_n$
Bcc	—	—	—	—	—	
BCLR	—	—	—	—	—	
BIAND	—	—	—	—	↕	$C = C' / D_n$
BILD	—	—	—	—	↕	$C = /D_n$
BIOR	—	—	—	—	↕	$C = C' + /D_n$
BIST	—	—	—	—	—	
BIXOR	—	—	—	—	↕	$C = C' / D_n + /C' / D_n$
BLD	—	—	—	—	↕	$C = D_n$
BNOT	—	—	—	—	—	
BOR	—	—	—	—	↕	$C = C' + D_n$
BSET	—	—	—	—	—	
BSR	—	—	—	—	—	
BST	—	—	—	—	—	
BTST	—	—	↕	—	—	$Z = /D_n$
BXOR	—	—	—	—	↕	$C = C' / D_n + /C' \cdot D_n$

Instruction	H	N	Z	V	C	Definition
CMP	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	$H = S_{m-4} / D_{m-4} + D_{m-4} \cdot R_{m-4} + S_{m-4} \cdot R_{m-4}$ $N = R_m$ $Z = / R_m \cdot / R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / R_0$ $V = / S_m \cdot D_m \cdot / R_m + S_m \cdot / D_m \cdot R_m$ $C = S_m \cdot / D_m + / D_m \cdot R_m + S_m \cdot R_m$
DAA	*	↕	↕	*	↕	$N = R_m$ $Z = / R_m \cdot / R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / R_0$ C: decimal arithmetic carry
DAS	*	↕	↕	*	↕	$N = R_m$ $Z = / R_m \cdot / R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / R_0$ C: decimal arithmetic borrow
DEC	—	↕	↕	↕	—	$N = R_m$ $Z = / R_m \cdot / R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / R_0$ $V = D_m \cdot / R_m$
DIVXS	—	↕	↕	—	—	$N = S_m \cdot / D_m + / S_m \cdot D_m$ $Z = / S_m \cdot / S_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / S_0$
DIVXU	—	↕	↕	—	—	$N = S_m$ $Z = / S_m \cdot / S_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / S_0$
EEPMOV	—	—	—	—	—	
EXTS	—	↕	↕	O	—	$N = R_m$ $Z = / R_m \cdot / R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / R_0$
EXTU	—	O	↕	O	—	$Z = / R_m \cdot / R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / R_0$
INC	—	↕	↕	↕	—	$N = R_m$ $Z = / R_m \cdot / R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / R_0$ $V = D_m \cdot / R_m$
JMP	—	—	—	—	—	
JSR	—	—	—	—	—	
LDC	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	Stores the corresponding bits of the result
MOV	—	↕	↕	O	—	$N = R_m$ $Z = / R_m \cdot / R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / R_0$
MOVFPPE	—	↕	↕	O	—	$N = R_m$ $Z = / R_m \cdot / R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / R_0$
MOVTPE	—	↕	↕	O	—	$N = R_m$ $Z = / R_m \cdot / R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot / R_0$

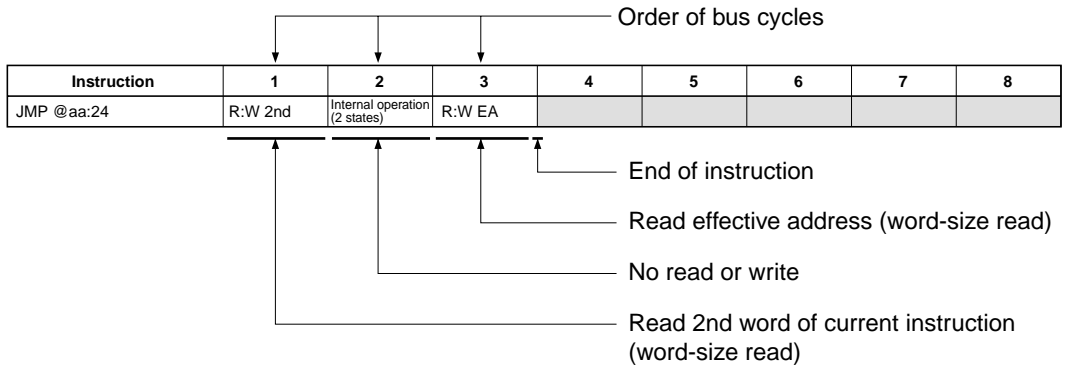
Instruction	H	N	Z	V	C	Definition
MULXS	—	↓	↓	—	—	$N = R2m$ $Z = R2m \cdot R2m - 1 \cdot \dots \cdot R0$
MULXU	—	—	—	—	—	
NEG	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	$H = Dm - 4 + Rm - 4$ $N = Rm$ $Z = / Rm \cdot / Rm - 1 \cdot \dots \cdot R0$ $V = Dm \cdot Rm$ $C = Dm + Rm$
NOP	—	—	—	—	—	
NOT	—	↓	↓	O	—	$N = Rm$ $Z = / Rm \cdot / Rm - 1 \cdot \dots \cdot R0$
OR	—	↓	↓	O	—	$N = Rm$ $Z = / Rm \cdot / Rm - 1 \cdot \dots \cdot R0$
ORC	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	Stores the corresponding bits of the result
POP	—	↓	↓	O	—	$N = Rm$ $Z = / Rm \cdot / Rm - 1 \cdot \dots \cdot R0$
PUSH	—	↓	↓	O	—	$N = Rm$ $Z = / Rm \cdot / Rm - 1 \cdot \dots \cdot R0$
ROTL	—	↓	↓	O	↓	$N = Rm$ $Z = / Rm \cdot / Rm - 1 \cdot \dots \cdot R0$ $C = Dm$
ROTR	—	↓	↓	O	↓	$N = Rm$ $Z = / Rm \cdot / Rm - 1 \cdot \dots \cdot R0$ $C = D0$
ROTXL	—	↓	↓	O	↓	$N = Rm$ $Z = / Rm \cdot / Rm - 1 \cdot \dots \cdot R0$ $C = Dm$
ROTXR	—	↓	↓	O	↓	$N = Rm$ $Z = / Rm \cdot / Rm - 1 \cdot \dots \cdot R0$ $C = D0$
RTS	—	—	—	—	—	
RTE	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	Stores the corresponding bits of the result

Instruction	H	N	Z	V	C	Definition
SHAL	—	↓	↓	↓	↓	$N = R_m$ $Z = /R_m \cdot /R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot /R_0$ $V = D_m \cdot /D_{m-1} + /D_m \cdot D_{m-1}$ $C = D_m$
SHAR	—	↓	↓	O	↓	$N = R_m$ $Z = /R_m \cdot /R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot /R_0$ $C = D_0$
SHLL	—	↓	↓	O	↓	$N = R_m$ $Z = /R_m \cdot /R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot /R_0$ $C = D_m$
SHLR	—	↓	↓	O	↓	$N = R_m$ $Z = /R_m \cdot /R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot /R_0$ $C = D_0$
SLEEP	—	—	—	—	—	
STC	—	—	—	—	—	
SUB	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	$H = S_{m-4} \cdot /D_{m-4} + /D_{m-4} \cdot R_{m-4} + S_{m-4} \cdot R_{m-4}$ $N = R_m$ $Z = /R_m \cdot /R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot /R_0$ $V = /S_m \cdot D_m \cdot /R_m + S_m \cdot /D_m \cdot R_m$ $C = S_m \cdot /D_m + /D_m \cdot R_m + S_m \cdot R_m$
SUBS	—	—	—	—	—	
SUBX	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	$H = S_{m-4} \cdot /D_{m-4} + /D_{m-4} \cdot R_{m-4} + S_{m-4} \cdot R_{m-4}$ $N = R_m$ $Z = Z' \cdot /R_m \cdot \dots \cdot /R_0$ $V = /S_m \cdot D_m \cdot /R_m + S_m \cdot /D_m \cdot R_m$ $C = S_m \cdot /D_m + /D_m \cdot R_m + S_m \cdot R_m$
TRAPA	—	—	—	—	—	
XOR	—	↓	↓	O	—	$N = R_m$ $Z = /R_m \cdot /R_{m-1} \cdot \dots \cdot /R_0$
XORC	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	Stores the corresponding bits of the result

## 2.8 Bus Cycles During Instruction Execution

Table 2.10 indicates the bus cycles during instruction execution by the H8/300H CPU. For the number of states per bus cycle, see table 2.7, Number of States per Cycle.

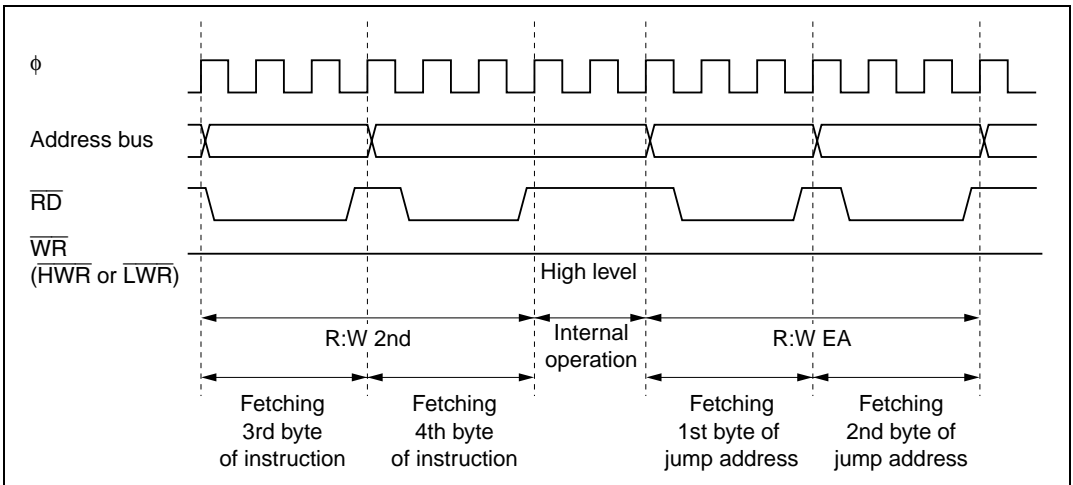
### How to read the table:



### Legend

R:B	Byte-size read
R:W	Word-size read
W:B	Byte-size write
W:W	Word-size write
2nd	Address of 2nd word (3rd and 4th bytes)
3rd	Address of 3rd word (5th and 6th bytes)
4th	Address of 4th word (7th and 8th bytes)
5th	Address of 5th word (9th and 10th bytes)
NEXT	Address of next instruction
EA	Effective address
VEC	Vector address

Figure 2.1 shows timing waveforms for the address bus and the  $\overline{RD}$  and  $\overline{WR}$  ( $\overline{HWR}$  or  $\overline{LWR}$ ) signals during execution of the above instruction with an 8-bit bus, using 3-state access with no wait states.



**Figure 2.1 Address Bus,  $\overline{RD}$ , and  $\overline{WR}$  ( $\overline{HWR}$  or  $\overline{LWR}$ ) Timing**  
(8-bit bus, 3-state access, no wait states)



Table 2.10 Bus States

Instruction	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
ADD.B #xx:8,Rd	R:W NEXT							
ADD.B Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
ADD.W #xx:16,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT						
ADD.W Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
ADD.L #xx:32,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT					
ADD.L ERs,ERd	R:W NEXT							
ADDS #1/2/4,ERd	R:W NEXT							
ADDX #xx:8,Rd	R:W NEXT							
ADDX Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
AND.B #xx:8,Rd	R:W NEXT							
AND.B Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
AND.W #xx:16,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT						
AND.W Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
AND.L #xx:32,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT					
AND.L ERs,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT						
ANDC #xx:8,CCR	R:W NEXT							
BAND #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BAND #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT					
BAND #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT					
BR.A d:8 (BT d:8)	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BR.N d:8 (BF d:8)	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BHI d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BLS d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BCC d:8 (BHS d:8)	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BCS d:8 (BLO d:8)	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BNE d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BEQ d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BVC d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BVS d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BPL d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BMI d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						

Instruction	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
BGE d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BLT d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BGT d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BLE d:8	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
BRA d:16 (BT d:16)	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BRN d:16 (BF d:16)	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BHI d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BLS d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BCC d:16 (BHS d:16)	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BCS d:16 (BLO d:16)	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BNE d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BEQ d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BVC d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BVS d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BPL d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BMI d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BGE d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BLT d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BGT d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
BLE d:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					

Instruction	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
BCLR #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BCLR #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BCLR #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BCLR Rn,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BCLR Rn,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BCLR Rn,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BIAND #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BIAND #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BILD #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BILD #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BILD #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BIOR #xx:8,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BIOR #xx:8,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BIOR #xx:8,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BIST #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BIST #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BIST #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BIXOR #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BIXOR #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BIXOR #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BLD #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BLD #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BLD #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BNOT #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BNOT #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BNOT #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BNOT Rn,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BNOT Rn,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BNOT Rn,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BOR #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BOR #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BOR #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT					
BSET #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BSET #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				
BSET #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:BEA	R:W NEXT	W:BEA				

Instruction	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
BSET Rn,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BSET Rn,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT	W:B EA				
BSET Rn,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT	W:B EA				
BRS d:8	Normal	R:W NEXT	W:W Stack					
	Advanced	R:W EA	W:W Stack (H)	W:W Stack (L)				
BRS d:16	Normal	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA	W:W Stack				
	Advanced	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA	W:W Stack (H)	W:W Stack (L)			
BST #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BST #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT	W:B EA				
BST #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT	W:B EA				
BTST #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BTST #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT					
BTST #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT					
BTST Rn,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BTST Rn,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT					
BTST Rn,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT					
BXOR #xx:3,Rd	R:W NEXT							
BXOR #xx:3,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT					
BXOR #xx:3,@aa:8	R:W 2nd	R:B EA	R:W NEXT					
CMPB #xx:8,Rd	R:W NEXT							
CMPB Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
CMPW #xx:16,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT						
CMPW Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
CMP.L #xx:32,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT					
CMP.L ERs,ERd	R:W NEXT							
DAA Rd	R:W NEXT							
DAS Rd	R:W NEXT							
DEC.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
DEC.L #1/2,Rd	R:W NEXT							
DEC.L #1/2,ERd	R:W NEXT							
DIYS.B Rs,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT			Internal operation, 12 states			
DIYS.W Rs,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT			Internal operation, 20 states			
DIYXU.B Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT				Internal operation, 12 states			
DIYXU.W Rs,ERd	R:W NEXT				Internal operation, 20 states			
EEMOV.B	R:W 2nd	R:B EAs *1	R:B EAd *1	R:B EAs *2	W:B EAd *2	R:W NEXT		
EEMOV.W	R:W 2nd	R:B EAs *1	R:B EAd *1	R:B EAs *2	W:B EAd *2	R:W NEXT		

Instruction	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
EXTS.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
EXTS.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
EXTU.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
EXTU.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
INC.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
INC.W #1/2,Rd	R:W NEXT							
INC.L #1/2,ERd	R:W NEXT							
JMP @ERn	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
JMP @aa:24	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
JMP @aa:8	Normal	R:W aa:8	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA				
	Advanced	R:W aa:8	R:W aa:8	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA			
JSR @ERn	Normal	R:W EA	W:W Stack					
	Advanced	R:W EA	W:W Stack (H)	W:W Stack (L)				
JSR @aa:24	Normal	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA	W:W Stack				
	Advanced	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA	W:W Stack (H)	W:W Stack (L)			
JSR @aa:8	Normal	R:W aa:8	W:W Stack	R:W EA				
	Advanced	R:W aa:8	R:W aa:8	W:W Stack (H)	W:W Stack (L)	R:W EA		
LDC #xx:8,CCR	R:W NEXT							
LDC Rs,CCR	R:W NEXT							
LDC @ERs,CCR	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA					
LDC @(d:16,ERs),CCR	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA				
LDC @(d:24,ERs),CCR	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W 5th	R:W NEXT	R:W EA		
LDC @ERs+,CCR	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA				
LDC @aa:16,CCR	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA				
LDC @aa:24,CCR	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W NEXT	R:W EA			
MOV.B #xx:8,Rd	R:W NEXT							
MOV.B Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
MOV.B @ERs,Rd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
MOV.B @(d:16,ERs),Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA					
MOV.B @(d:24,ERs),Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W NEXT	R:W EA			

Instruction	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
MOV.B @ERs+,Rd	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	R:B EA					
MOV.B @aa:8,Rd	R:W NEXT	R:B EA						
MOV.B @aa:16,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	R:B EA					
MOV.B @aa:24,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	R:B EA				
MOV.B Rs,@ERd	R:W NEXT	W:B EA						
MOV.B Rs,@(d:16,ERd)	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	W:B EA					
MOV.B Rs,@(d:24,ERd)	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W NEXT	W:B EA			
MOV.B Rs,@-ERd	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	W:B EA					
MOV.B Rs,@aa:8	R:W NEXT	W:B EA						
MOV.B Rs,@aa:16	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	W:B EA					
MOV.B Rs,@aa:24	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	W:B EA				
MOV.W #xx:16,Rd	R:W NEXT	R:W NEXT						
MOV.W Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
MOV.W @ERs,Rd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA						
MOV.W @(d:16,ERs),Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA					
MOV.W @(d:24,ERs),Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W NEXT	R:W EA			
MOV.W @ERs+,Rd	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA					
MOV.W @aa:16,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA					
MOV.W @aa:24,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	R:B EA				
MOV.W Rs,@ERd	R:W NEXT	W:W EA						
MOV.W Rs,@(d:16,ERd)	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	W:W EA					
MOV.W Rs,@(d:24,ERd)	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:E 4th	R:W NEXT	W:W EA			
MOV.W Rs,@-ERd	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	W:W EA					
MOV.W Rs,@aa:16	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	W:W EA					
MOV.W Rs,@aa:24	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	W:W EA				
MOV.L #xx:32,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT					
MOV.L ERs,ERd	R:W NEXT							
MOV.L @ERs,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA	R:W EA+2				
MOV.L @(d:16,ERs),ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA	R:W EA+2			
MOV.L @(d:24,ERs),ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W 5th	R:W NEXT	R:W EA	R:W EA+2	
MOV.L @ERs+,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W EA	R:W EA+2			

Instruction	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
MOV.L @aa:16,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	R:W EA	R:W EA+2			
MOV.L @aa:24,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W NEXT	R:W EA	R:W EA+2		
MOV.L ERs @ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	W:W EA	W:W EA+2				
MOV.L ERs @(d:16,ERd)	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	W:W EA				
MOV.L ERs @(d:24,ERd)	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W 5th	R:W NEXT	W:W EA	W:W EA+2	
MOV.L ERs @-ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	W:W EA	W:W EA+2			
MOV.L ERs @aa:16	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	W:W EA	W:W EA+2			
MOV.L ERs @aa:24	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W NEXT	W:W EA	W:W EA+2		
MOV.FPE @aa:16,Rd	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W *3 EA					
MOV.TPE Rs,@aa:16	R:W 2nd	Internal operation, 2 states	W:W *3 EA					
MUL.XS.B Rs,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT			Internal operation, 12 states			
MUL.XS.W Rs,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT			Internal operation, 20 states			
MUL.XU.B Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT			Internal operation, 12 states				
MUL.XU.W Rs,ERd	R:W NEXT			Internal operation, 20 states				
NEG.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
NEG.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
NEG.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
NOP	R:W NEXT							
NOTB Rd	R:W NEXT							
NOTW Rd	R:W NEXT							
NOTL ERd	R:W NEXT							
OR.B #xx:8,Rd	R:W NEXT							
OR.B Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
OR.W #xx:16,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT						
OR.W Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
OR.L #xx:32,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W rd	R:W NEXT					
OR.L ERs,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT						
ORC #xx:8,CCR	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W Stack					
POP.W Rn	R:W NEXT							
POP.L ERn	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W Stack (H)	R:W Stack (L)			

Instruction	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
PUSH.W Rn	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	W:W Stack					
PUSH.L ERn	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	W:W Stack (L)	W:W Stack (H)			
ROTL.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
ROTL.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
ROTL.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
ROTR.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
ROTR.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
ROTR.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
ROTXL.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
ROTXL.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
ROTXL.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
ROTXR.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
ROTXR.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
ROTXR.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
RTE	R:W NEXT	R:W Stack (H)	R:W Stack (L)	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W (*4)			
RTS	Normal	R:W Stack	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W (*4)				
	Advanced	R:W NEXT	R:W Stack (L)	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W (*4)			
SHAL.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
SHAL.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
SHAL.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
SHAR.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
SHAR.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
SHAR.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
SHLL.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
SHLL.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
SHLL.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
SHLR.B Rd	R:W NEXT							
SHLR.W Rd	R:W NEXT							
SHLR.L ERd	R:W NEXT							
SLEEP	R:W NEXT							
STC CCR,Rd	R:W NEXT							



Instruction	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
STC CCR,@ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	W:W EA					
STC CCR,@(d:16,ERd)	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	W:W EA				
STC CCR,@(d:24,ERd)	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W 5th	R:W NEXT	W:W EA		
STC CCR,@-ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	W:W EA				
STC CCR,@aa:16	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT	W:W EA				
STC CCR,@aa:24	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W 4th	R:W NEXT	W:W EA			
SUBB Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
SUB.W #xx:16,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT						
SUB.W Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
SUB.L #xx:32,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT					
SUB.L ERs,ERd	R:W NEXT							
SUBS #1/2/4,ERd	R:W NEXT							
SUBX #xx:8,Rd	R:W NEXT							
SUBX Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
TRAPA #x:2	Normal R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	W:W Stack (L)	W:W Stack (H)	R:W VEC	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W (*7)	
	Advanced R:W NEXT	Internal operation, 2 states	W:W Stack (L)	W:W Stack (H)	R:W VEC	R:W VEC+2	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W (*7)
XOR.B #xx:8,Rd	R:W NEXT							
XOR.B Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
XOR.W #xx:16,Rd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT						
XOR.W Rs,Rd	R:W NEXT							
XOR.L #xx:32,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W 3rd	R:W NEXT					
XOR.L ERs,ERd	R:W 2nd	R:W NEXT						
XORC #xx:8,CCR	R:W NEXT							
Reset exception handling	Normal R:W VEC	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W (*5)					
	Advanced R:W VEC	R:W VEC+2	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W (*5)				
Interrupt exception handling	Normal R:W (*6)	Internal operation, 2 states	W:W stack (L)	W:W stack (H)	R:W VEC	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W (*7)	
	Advanced R:W (*6)	Internal operation, 2 states	W:W stack (L)	W:W stack (H)	R:W VEC	R:W VEC+2	Internal operation, 2 states	R:W (*7)

- Notes:
1. EAs is the contents of ER5. EAd is the contents of R6.
  2. EAs is the contents of ER5. EAd is the contents of R6. Both registers are incremented by 1 after execution of the instruction. n is the initial value of R4L or R4. If n = 0, these bus cycles are not executed.
  3. The number of states required for byte read or write varies from 9 to 16.
  4. Starting address after return.
  5. Starting address of the program.
  6. Prefetch address, equal to two plus the PC value pushed on the stack. In recovery from sleep mode or software standby mode the read operation is replaced by an internal operation.
  7. Starting address of the interrupt-handling routine.
  8. NEXT: Next address after the current instruction.
    - 2nd: Address of the second word of the current instruction.
    - 3rd: Address of the third word of the current instruction.
    - 4th: Address of the fourth word of the current instruction.
    - 5th: Address of the fifth word of the current instruction.
- EA: Effective address.  
VEC: Vector address.

## Section 3 Processing States

### 3.1 Overview

The CPU has five main processing states: the program execution state, exception handling state, power-down state, reset state, and bus-released state. The power-down state includes sleep mode, software standby mode, and hardware standby mode. Figure 3.1 shows a diagram of the processing states. Figure 3.2 indicates the state transitions. For details, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

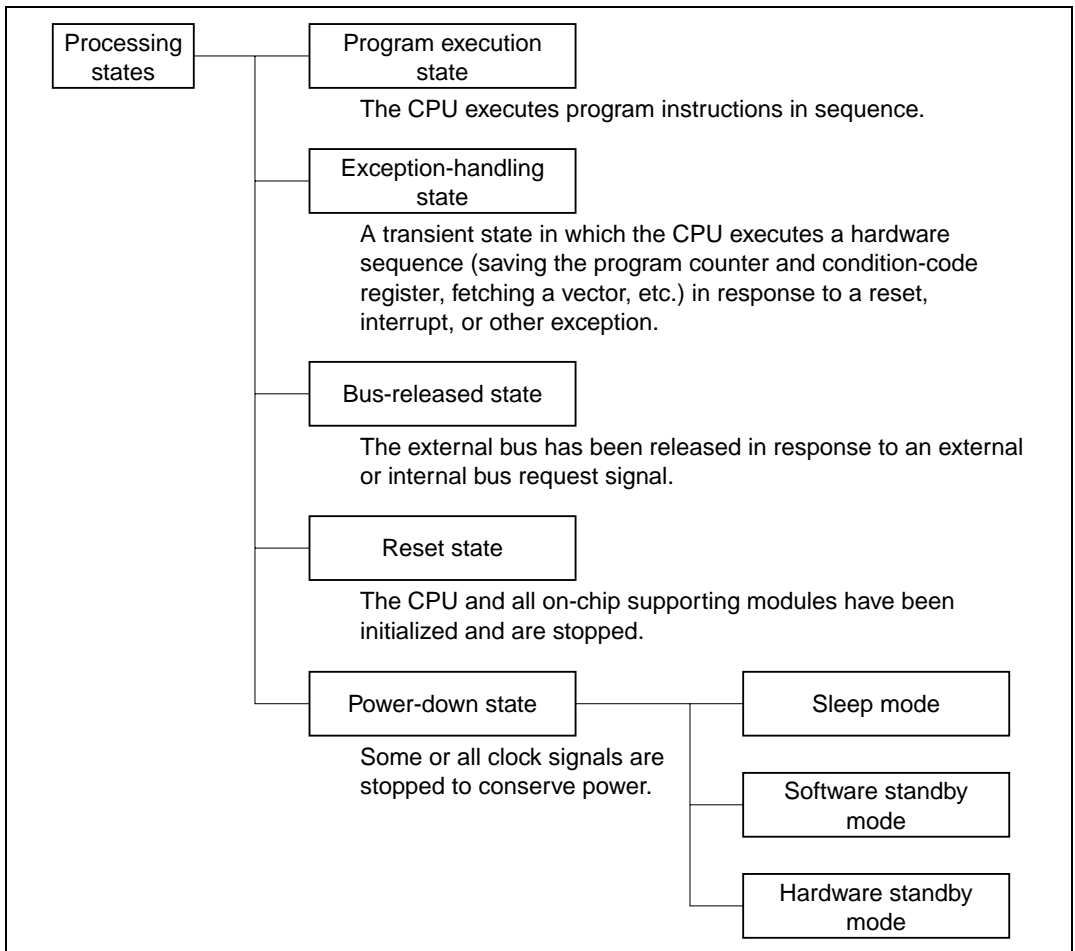


Figure 3.1 Processing States

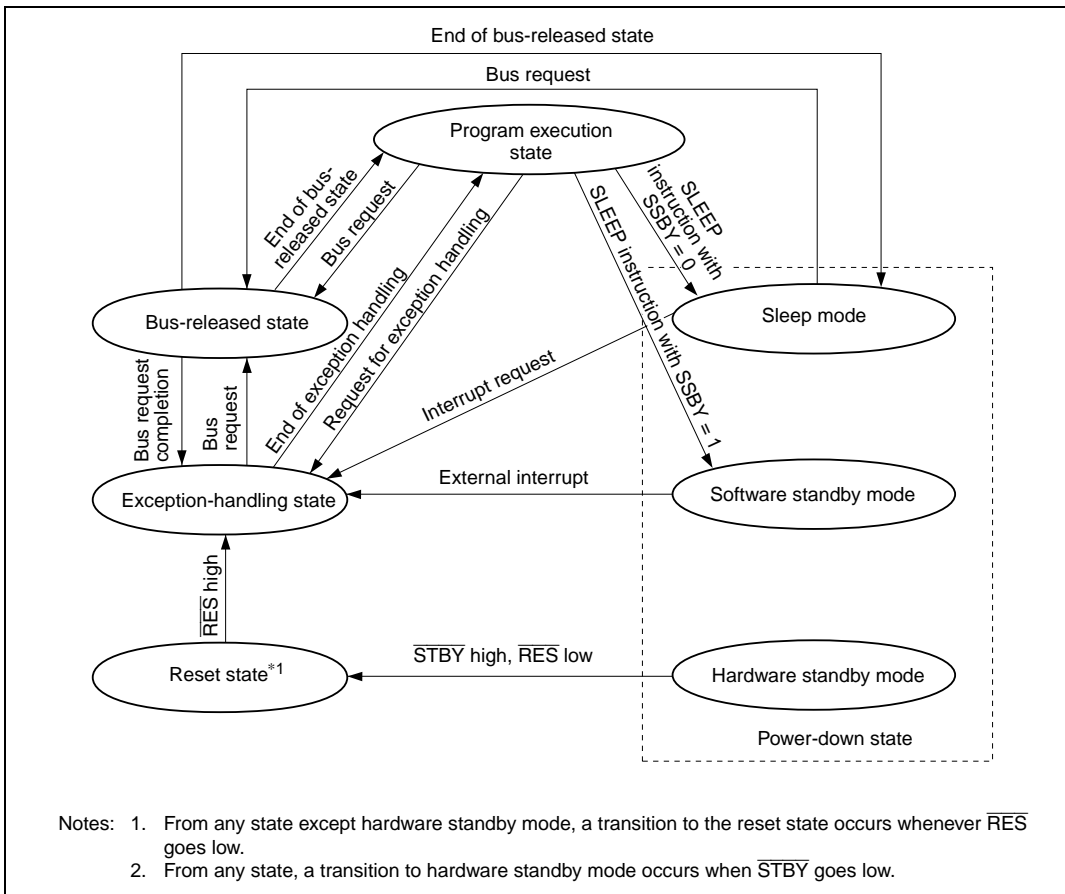


Figure 3.2 State Transitions

## 3.2 Program Execution State

In this state the CPU executes program instructions in normal sequence.

## 3.3 Exception-Handling State

The exception-handling state is a transient state that occurs when the CPU alters the normal program flow due to a reset, interrupt, or trap instruction. The CPU fetches a starting address from the exception vector table and branches to that address. In interrupt exception handling the CPU references the stack pointer (ER7) and saves the program counter and condition-code register.

### 3.3.1 Types of Exception Handling and Their Priority

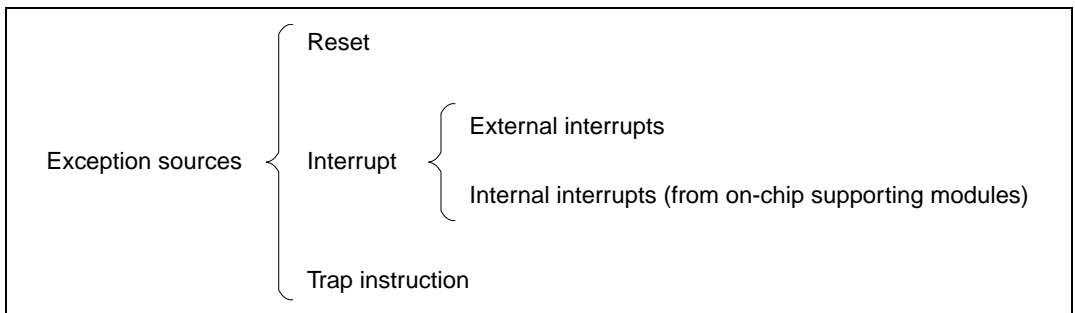
Exception handling is performed for resets, interrupts, and trap instructions. Table 3.1 indicates the types of exception handling and their priority.

**Table 3.1 Exception Handling Types and Priority**

Priority	Type of Exception	Detection Timing	Start of Exception Handling
High ↑ Low	Reset	Synchronized with clock	Exception handling starts immediately when $\overline{\text{RES}}$ changes from low to high
	Interrupt	End of instruction execution (see note)	When an interrupt is requested, exception handling starts at the end of the current instruction or current exception-handling sequence
	Trap instruction	When TRAPA instruction is executed	Exception handling starts when a trap (TRAPA) instruction is executed

Note: Interrupts are not detected at the end of the ANDC, ORC, XORC, and LDC instructions, or immediately after reset exception handling.

Figure 3.3 classifies the exception sources. For further details about exception sources, vector numbers, and vector addresses refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.



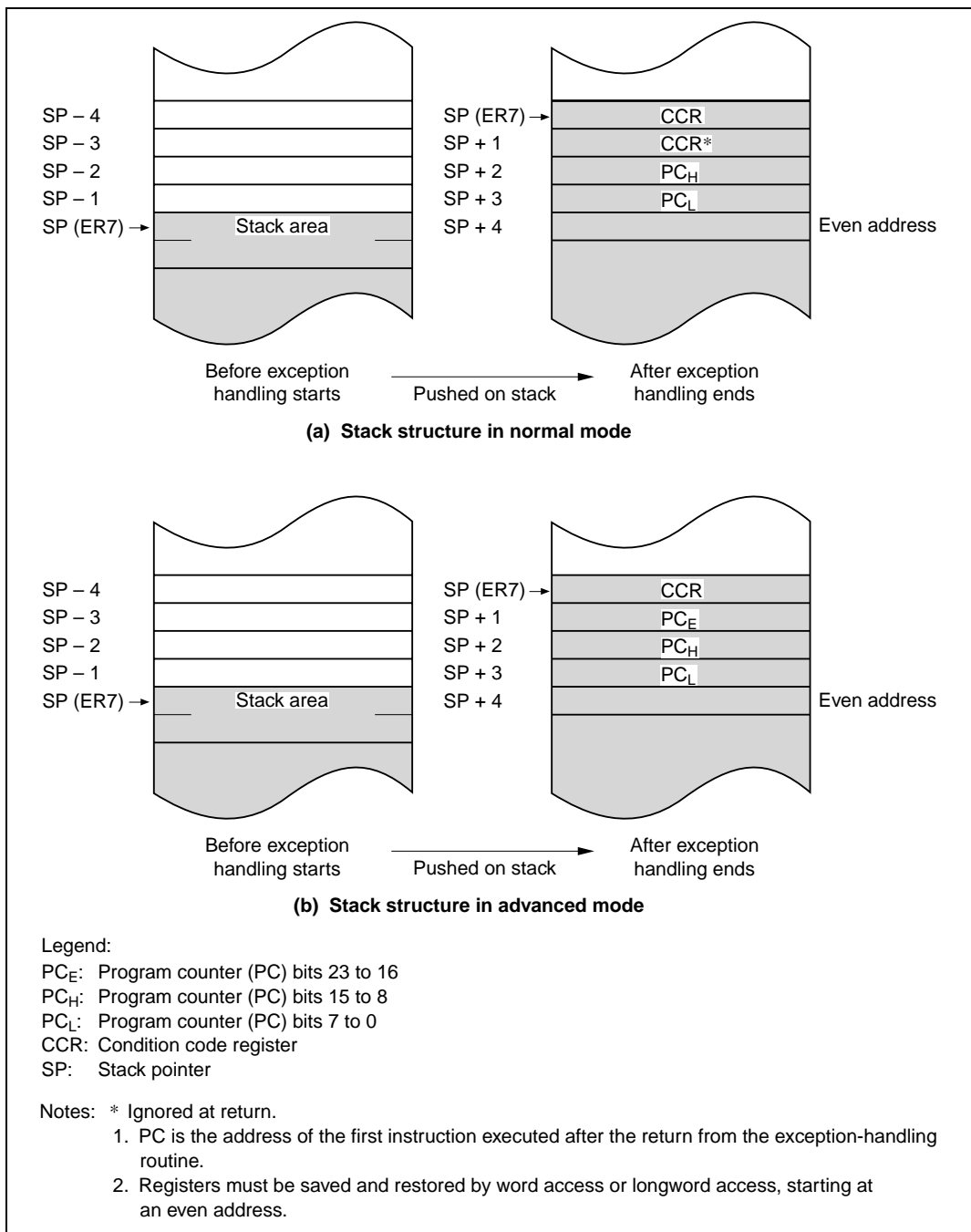
**Figure 3.3 Classification of Exception Sources**

### 3.3.2 Exception-Handling Sequences

**Reset Exception Handling:** Reset exception handling has the highest priority. The reset state is entered when the  $\overline{\text{RES}}$  signal goes low. Then, if RES goes high again, reset exception handling starts when the reset condition is satisfied. Refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual for details about the reset condition. When reset exception handling starts the CPU fetches a start address from the exception vector table and starts program execution from that address. All interrupts, including NMI, are disabled during the reset exception-handling sequence and immediately after it ends.

**Interrupt Exception Handling and Trap Instruction Exception Handling:** When these exception-handling sequences begin, the CPU references the stack pointer (ER7) and pushes the program counter and condition-code register on the stack. Next, if the UE bit in the system control register (SYSCR) is set to 1, the CPU sets the I bit in the condition-code register to 1. If the UE bit is cleared to 0, the CPU sets both the I bit and the UI bit in the condition-code register to 1. Then the CPU fetches a start address from the exception vector table and execution branches to that address.

The program-counter value pushed on the stack and the start address fetched from the vector table are 16 bits long in normal mode and 24 bits long in advanced mode. Figure 3.4 shows the stack after the exception-handling sequence.



**Figure 3.4 Stack Structure after Exception Handling**

### 3.4 Bus-Released State

This is a state in which the bus has been released in response to a bus request from a bus master other than the CPU. While the bus is released, the CPU halts except for internal operations. For further details, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

For further details, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

### 3.5 Reset State

When the  $\overline{\text{RES}}$  input goes low all current processing stops and the CPU enters the reset state. The I bit in the condition-code register is set to 1 by a reset. All interrupts are masked in the reset state. Reset exception handling starts when the  $\overline{\text{RES}}$  signal changes from low to high.

### 3.6 Power-Down State

In the power-down state the CPU stops operating to conserve power. There are three modes: sleep mode, software standby mode, and hardware standby mode. For details, refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.

#### 3.6.1 Sleep Mode

A transition to sleep mode is made if the SLEEP instruction is executed while the software standby bit (SSBY) is cleared to 0.

CPU operations stop immediately after execution of the SLEEP instruction. The contents of CPU registers are retained.

#### 3.6.2 Software Standby Mode

A transition to software standby mode is made if the SLEEP instruction is executed while the SSBY bit is set to 1.

The CPU and clock halt and all on-chip supporting modules stop operating. The on-chip supporting modules are reset, but as long as a specified voltage is supplied the contents of CPU registers and on-chip RAM are retained. The I/O ports also remain in their existing states.



### 3.6.3 Hardware Standby Mode

A transition to hardware standby mode is made when the  $\overline{\text{STBY}}$  input goes low.

As in software standby mode, the CPU and clock halt and the on-chip supporting modules are reset, but as long as a specified voltage is supplied, on-chip RAM contents are retained.



## Section 4 Basic Timing

### 4.1 Overview

The CPU is driven by a clock, denoted by the symbol  $\phi$ . One cycle of the clock is referred to as a “state.” The memory cycle or bus cycle consists of two or three states. Different methods are used to access on-chip memory, on-chip supporting modules, and external devices. Refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual for details.

### 4.2 On-Chip Memory (RAM, ROM)

For high-speed processing, on-chip memory is accessed in two states. The data bus is 16 bits wide, permitting both byte and word access. Figure 4.1 shows the on-chip memory access cycle. Figure 4.2 shows the pin states.

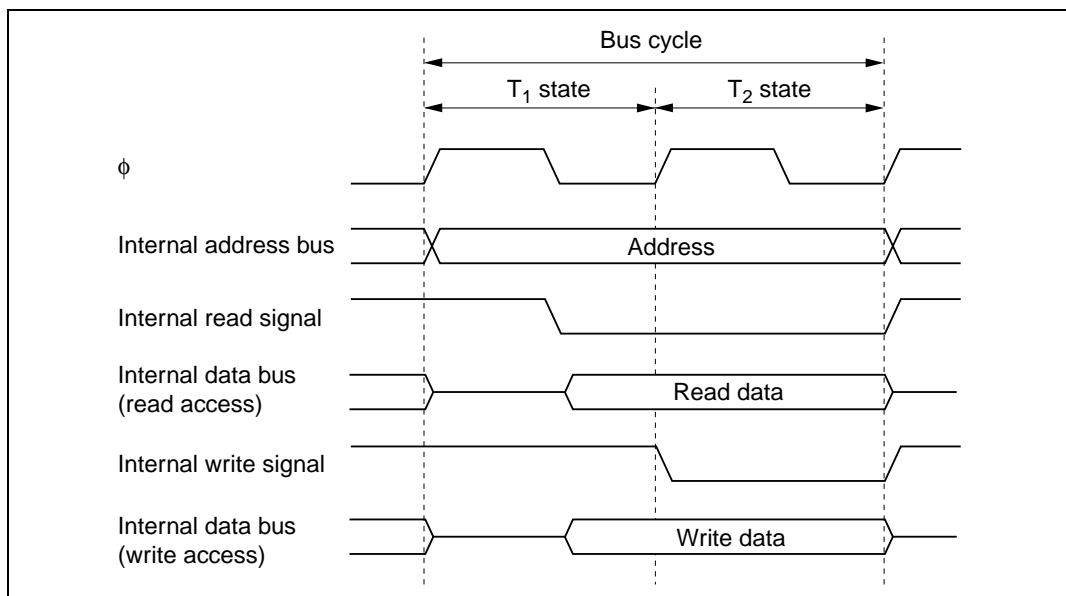
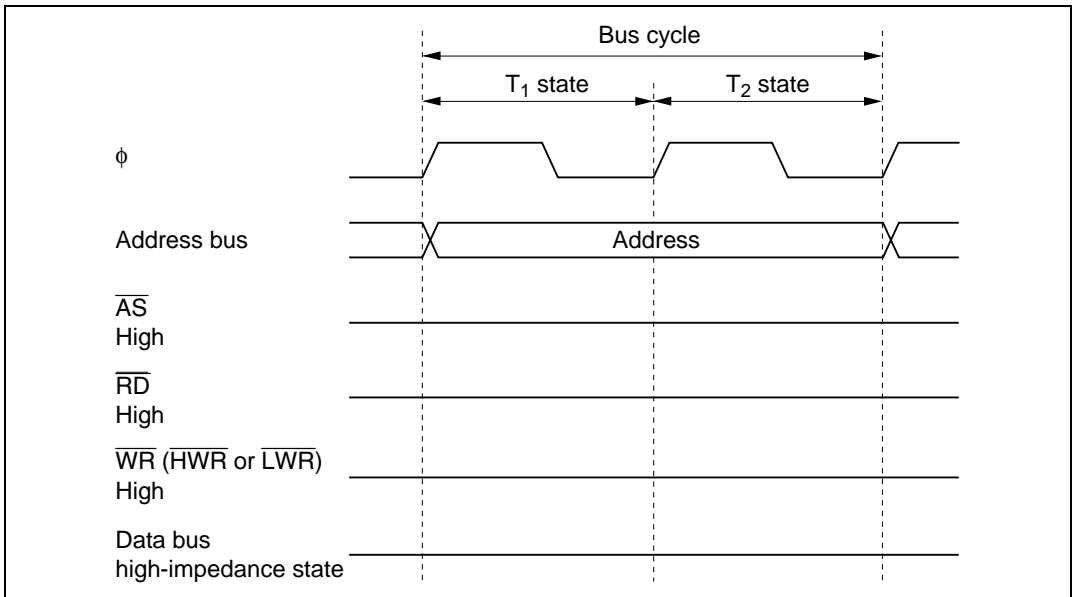


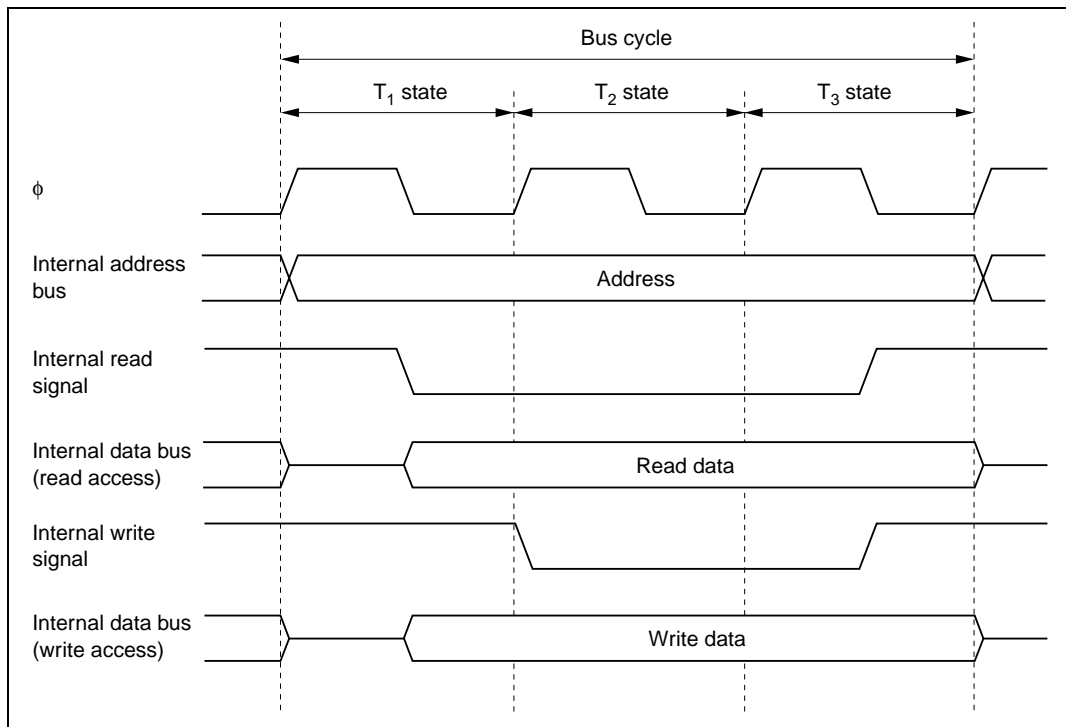
Figure 4.1 On-Chip Memory Access Cycle



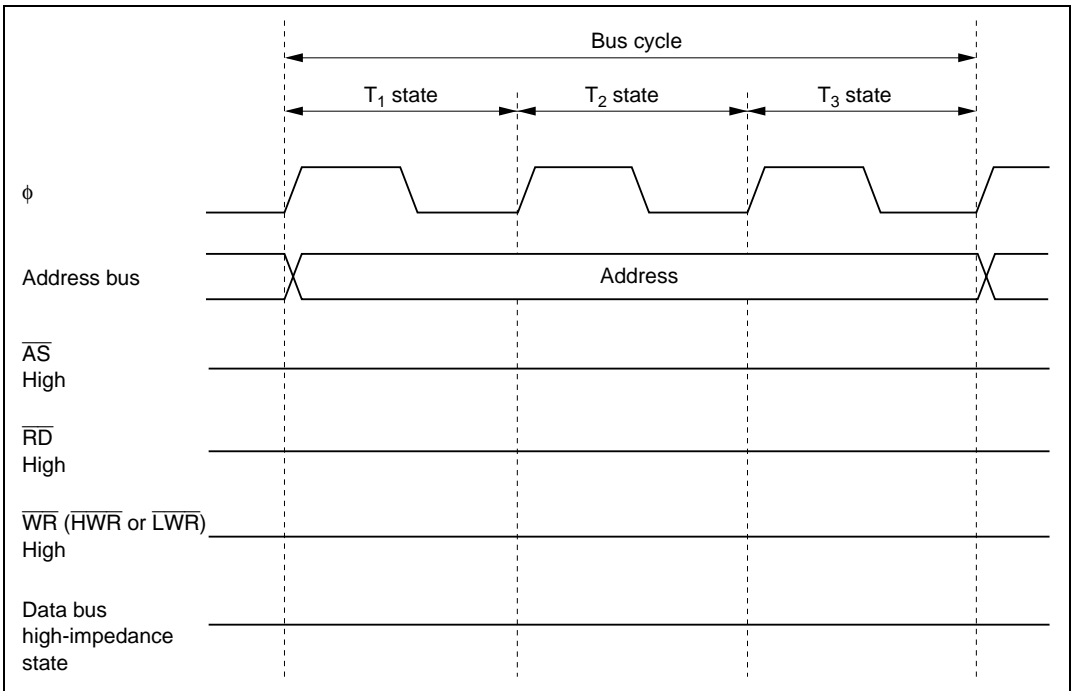
**Figure 4.2 Pin States during On-Chip Memory Access**

### 4.3 On-Chip Supporting Modules

The on-chip supporting modules are accessed in three states. The data bus is 8 bits or 16 bits wide. Figure 4.3 shows the access timing for the on-chip supporting modules. Figure 4.4 shows the pin states.



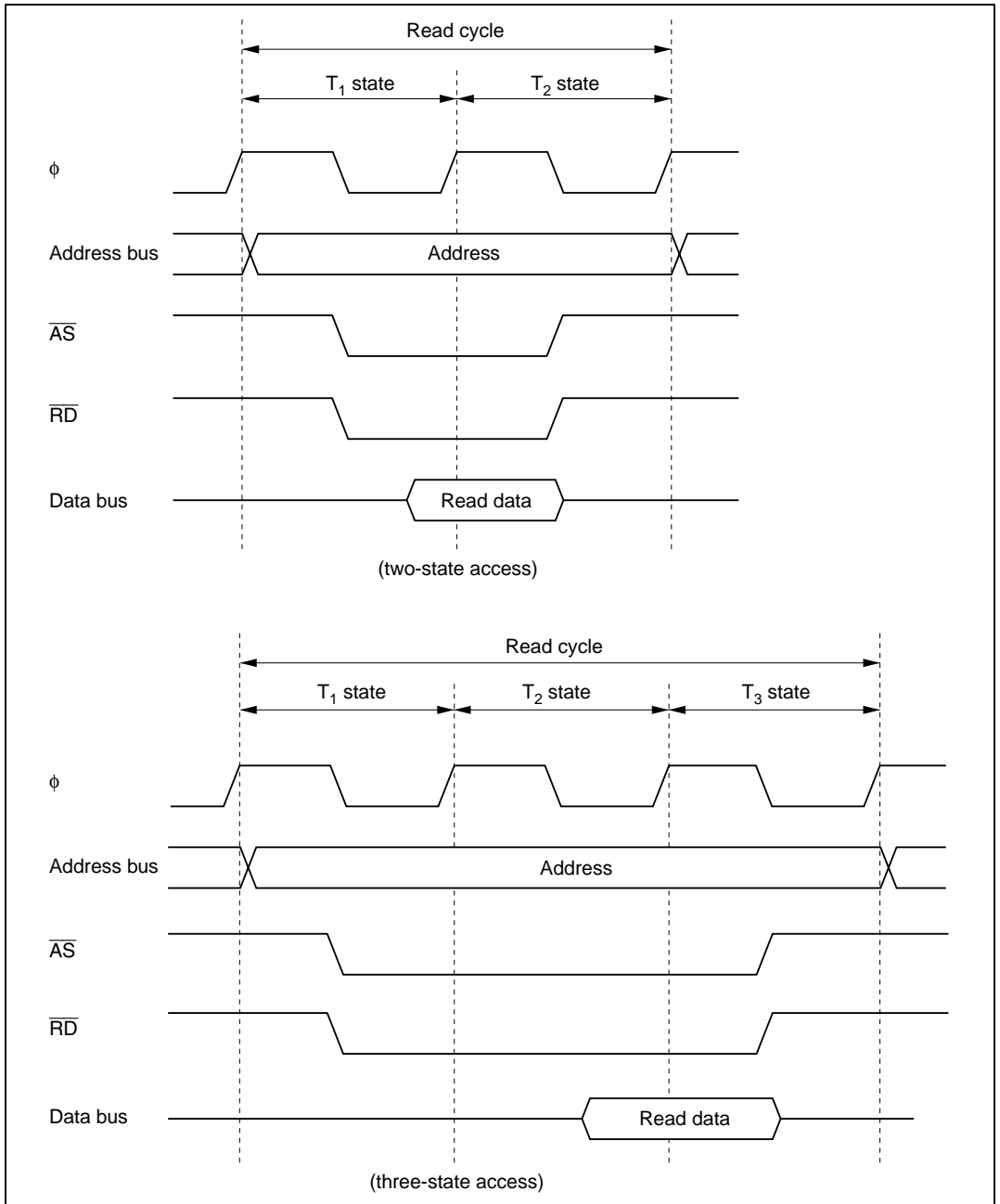
**Figure 4.3 On-Chip Supporting Module Access Cycle**



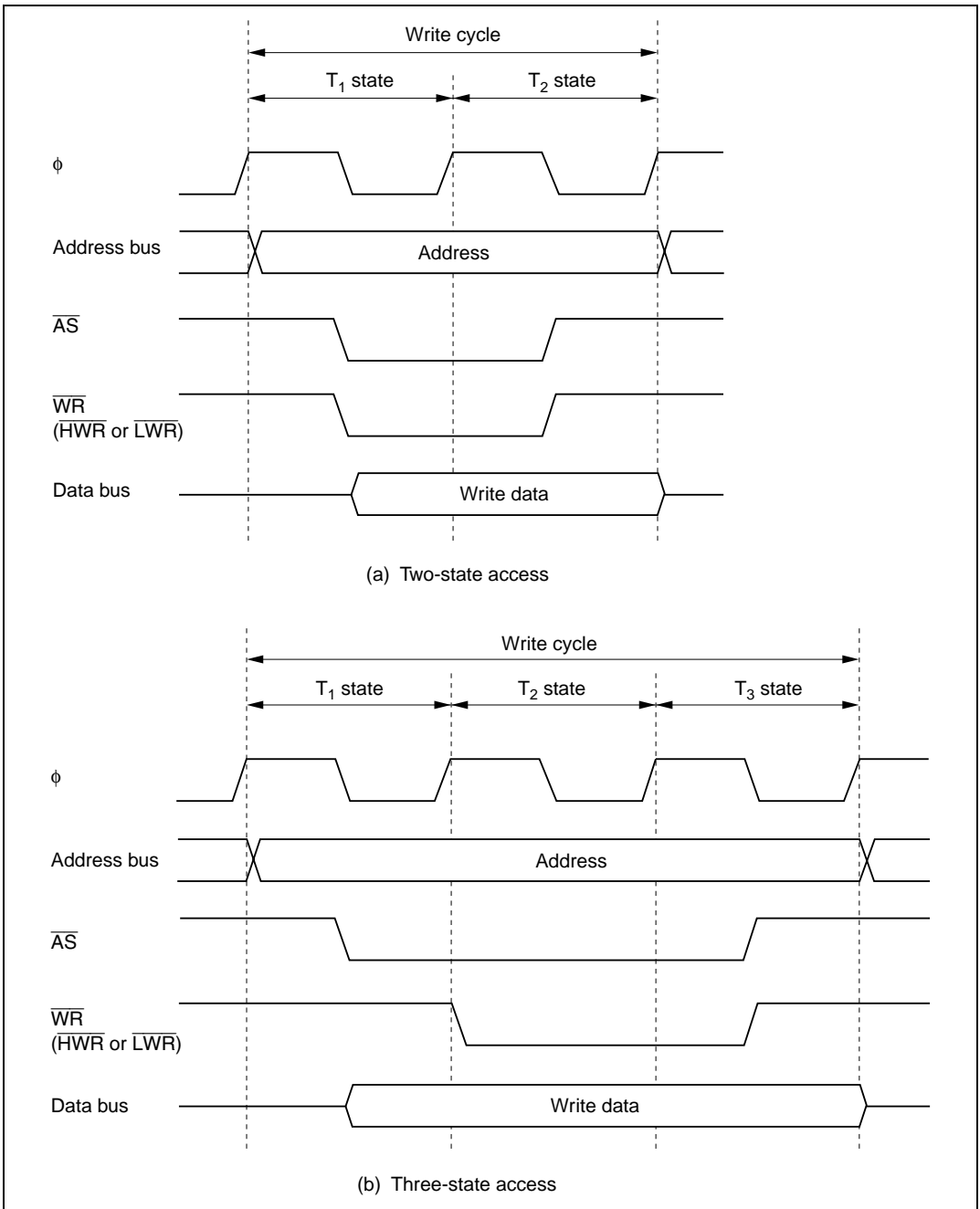
**Figure 4.4 Pin States during On-Chip Supporting Module Access**

## 4.4 External Data Bus

The external data bus is accessed with 8-bit or 16-bit bus width in two or three states. Figure 4.5 shows the read timing for two-state or three-state access. Figure 4.6 shows the write timing for two-state or three-state access. In three-state access, wait states can be inserted by the wait-state controller or other means. For further details refer to the relevant microcontroller hardware manual.



**Figure 4.5 External Device Access Timing (1) Read Timing**



**Figure 4.6 External Device Access Timing (2) Write Timing**



---

**Renesas 16-Bit Single-Chip Microcomputer  
Software Manual  
H8/300H Series**

Publication Date: 1st Edition, August 1993  
Rev.3.00, December 13, 2004

Published by: Sales Strategic Planning Div.  
Renesas Technology Corp.

Edited by: Technical Documentation & Information Department  
Renesas Kodaira Semiconductor Co., Ltd.

---

Renesas Technology Corp. Sales Strategic Planning Div. Nippon Bldg., 2-6-2, Ohte-machi, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 100-0004, Japan

---



**RENESAS SALES OFFICES**

<http://www.renesas.com>

---

Refer to "<http://www.renesas.com/en/network>" for the latest and detailed information.

**Renesas Technology America, Inc.**

450 Holger Way, San Jose, CA 95134-1368, U.S.A  
Tel: <1> (408) 382-7500, Fax: <1> (408) 382-7501

**Renesas Technology Europe Limited**

Dukes Meadow, Millboard Road, Bourne End, Buckinghamshire, SL8 5FH, U.K.  
Tel: <44> (1628) 585-100, Fax: <44> (1628) 585-900

**Renesas Technology Hong Kong Ltd.**

7th Floor, North Tower, World Finance Centre, Harbour City, 1 Canton Road, Tsimshatsui, Kowloon, Hong Kong  
Tel: <852> 2265-6688, Fax: <852> 2730-6071

**Renesas Technology Taiwan Co., Ltd.**

10th Floor, No.99, Fushing North Road, Taipei, Taiwan  
Tel: <886> (2) 2715-2888, Fax: <886> (2) 2713-2999

**Renesas Technology (Shanghai) Co., Ltd.**

Unit2607 Ruijing Building, No.205 Maoming Road (S), Shanghai 200020, China  
Tel: <86> (21) 6472-1001, Fax: <86> (21) 6415-2952

**Renesas Technology Singapore Pte. Ltd.**

1 Harbour Front Avenue, #06-10, Keppel Bay Tower, Singapore 098632  
Tel: <65> 6213-0200, Fax: <65> 6278-8001



# H8/300H Series Software Manual



Renesas Technology Corp.

2-6-2, Ote-machi, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, 100-0004, Japan